

Customer Portal

**Oracle FLEXCUBE Private Banking**

Release 12.0.2.0.0

Part No. E49767-01

September 2013

Customer Portal  
September 2013  
Oracle Financial Services Software Limited

Oracle Park

Off Western Express Highway  
Goregaon (East)  
Mumbai, Maharashtra 400 063  
India

Worldwide Inquiries:

Phone: +91 22 6718 3000

Fax: +91 22 6718 3001

[www.oracle.com/financialservices/](http://www.oracle.com/financialservices/)

Copyright © 2007, 2013, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate failsafe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

---

# Table of Contents

<b>1. PREFACE .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
1.1.1 Introduction .....	1-1
1.1.2 Scope.....	1-1
1.1.3 Audience .....	1-1
1.1.4 Documentation Accessibility.....	1-1
1.1.5 Organization of the Document.....	1-2
1.1.6 Conventions Used .....	1-2
1.2 SYSTEM OVERVIEW AND CAPABILITIES .....	1-2
<b>2. CUSTOMER RELATED MENUS.....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
2.1 CUSTOMER DASHBOARD .....	2-1
2.2 VIEW PROFILE .....	2-4
2.3 RM DETAILS.....	2-5
2.4 VOLUNTARY CORPORATE ACTION.....	2-6
2.5 SEND MESSAGE .....	2-8
2.6 MODEL PORTFOLIO.....	2-9
2.7 CUSTOMER RISK PROFILER .....	2-11
2.8 PRODUCT SEARCH .....	2-12
2.9 FEE MANDATE.....	2-13
2.10 CHANGE PASSWORD .....	2-14
2.11 SURVEY QUESTIONNAIRE .....	2-15
<b>3. PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
3.1 INTRODUCTION .....	3-1
3.2 PORTFOLIO CREATION AND MAINTENANCE .....	3-3
3.2.1 Portfolio Creation.....	3-5
3.2.2 Portfolio Maintenance - Modify/Delete .....	3-9
3.3 PORTFOLIO VALUATION.....	3-12
3.3.1 Equity.....	3-19
3.3.2 Mutual Fund .....	3-28
3.3.3 Bond.....	3-33
3.3.4 Insurance .....	3-38
3.3.5 Others .....	3-40
3.3.6 Structured Product.....	3-42
3.3.7 Commodities .....	3-46
3.3.8 PMS .....	3-49
3.3.9 Generic Instrument .....	3-52
3.3.10 Corpus .....	3-53
3.3.11 CASA.....	3-54
3.3.12 Futures.....	3-57
3.3.13 Options.....	3-60
3.3.14 Forex.....	3-62
3.3.15 Fee .....	3-63
3.4 PORTFOLIO ANALYSIS.....	3-64
3.4.1 View Portfolio Analysis – By Portfolio.....	3-65
3.4.2 View Portfolio Analysis – By Instrument Type .....	3-71
3.4.3 View Portfolio Analysis – By Asset Class .....	3-77
3.4.4 View Portfolio Analysis – By Region.....	3-90
3.4.5 View Portfolio Analysis – By Currency .....	3-92
3.4.6 View Portfolio Analysis – By Industry .....	3-94
3.4.7 View Portfolio Analysis – By Market Capitalization .....	3-97

3.5	SIMULATOR .....	3-101
3.6	PORTFOLIO ALERTS .....	3-120
3.7	TRACK GOALS .....	3-128
<b>4.</b>	<b>INVESTMENT PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
<b>5.</b>	<b>ORDER MANAGEMENT AND TRANSACTION MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
5.1	INTRODUCTION .....	5-1
5.2	EQUITY ORDER MANAGEMENT .....	5-2
5.2.1	Equity Order Capture .....	5-4
5.2.2	Transaction Processing for Equity .....	5-12
5.3	MUTUAL FUNDS ORDER MANAGEMENT .....	5-17
5.3.1	Order Management for Mutual Funds.....	5-17
5.3.2	Transaction processing for Mutual Fund .....	5-31
5.3.3	MF Sys Plan Cancellation .....	5-40
5.4	BONDS.....	5-42
5.4.1	Transaction Processing for Bonds.....	5-42
5.4.2	Order Management for Bonds .....	5-52
5.5	INSURANCE.....	5-61
5.5.1	Order Management for Insurance .....	5-61
5.6	STRUCTURED PRODUCT.....	5-69
5.6.1	Order Management for Structured Products.....	5-69
5.6.2	Transaction Processing for Structured Products.....	5-82
5.7	PMS .....	5-91
5.7.1	Order Management for PMS .....	5-91
5.8	TRANSACTION PROCESSING FOR OTHER COLLECTIBLES .....	5-102
5.8.1	Transaction Processing for Others .....	5-102
5.9	COMMODITIES .....	5-108
5.9.1	Order Management for Commodities .....	5-108
5.9.2	Transaction Processing for Commodities.....	5-115
5.10	FUTURES.....	5-120
5.10.1	Order Management for Futures.....	5-120
5.10.2	Transaction Processing for Futures .....	5-124
5.11	OPTIONS .....	5-127
5.11.1	Order Management for Options.....	5-127
5.11.2	Transaction Processing for Options .....	5-133
5.12	FOREX .....	5-136
5.12.1	Order Management for Forex.....	5-136
5.12.2	Transaction Processing for Forex .....	5-142
5.13	GENERIC INSTRUMENTS.....	5-147
5.13.1	Generic Instruments Transaction Processing .....	5-147
5.14	COMMON ORDER BOOK .....	5-150
5.15	TRANSACTION SEARCH.....	5-156
5.16	BANK A/C AND LOANS SCREEN .....	5-158
<b>6.</b>	<b>REPORTS .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
6.1	INTRODUCTION .....	6-1
6.1.1	Reports Repository.....	6-8

---

# 1. Preface

## 1.1.1 Introduction

The objective of the current user manual is to clearly describe and document the functions of the system from the customer perspective.

The current User Manual serves the following purpose related to Customer tasks:

1. It represents the entry point into the system from the end user's angle.
2. Provides a chronological and complete view of all the information necessary to understand and use the system within the user environment. It thus serves as a hand book that instructs the user how to access the system, run programs, correct mistakes and solve typical problems.
3. Identifies the tasks which must be carried out by the user, in using the system, the objectives of those tasks and the main deliverables which signify successful completion of each task.
4. It also describes in detail all system inputs, processes, outputs and controls and provides background reading/reference to supplement training and testing.

## 1.1.2 Scope

The intention of this User Manual is to provide a comprehensive guide to the Customers of the system. It can also be used as a trouble-shooting guide.

## 1.1.3 Audience

The potential readers of this document include but not limited to

1. The Relationship Manager, Customers and other users of the system.
2. Top and middle management executives.
3. Developers, database designers of the system for their reference.
4. Product and Functional teams

## 1.1.4 Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.



### 1.1.5 Organization of the Document

The Manual is organized into the following five chapters:

<b>Chapter 1</b>	Introduction – Helps to understand the purpose and scope to the current user manual along with system overview and capabilities.
<b>Chapter 2</b>	Customer Related Menu – Helps to understand the customer dashboard, which is a snapshot of customer related menus.
<b>Chapter 3</b>	Portfolio Management – Helps to understand the portfolio management.
<b>Chapter 4</b>	Investment Performance Management – Helps to understand the investment performance management.
<b>Chapter 5</b>	Order Management and Transaction Management – Helps to understand the order management and transaction management.
<b>Chapter 6</b>	Reports – Helps to understand the reports.

### 1.1.6 Conventions Used

This sub-section explains the conventions followed in the preparation of the manual.

<b>Text</b>	<b>Description</b>
Example	Illustration of the concept
	Additional comments or instructions
	Search icon, to search for the desired data
Bold Letters	Command buttons or important text  The command button titles appear as they appear on the screen.

## 1.2 System Overview and Capabilities

Wealth Management is one of the fastest growing areas in the banking industry. Wealth Management services typically follow the cycle of financial planning, portfolio construction & execution, portfolio administration, monitoring and on-going management of the overall wealth of the customer.

Growing population and increasing disposable incomes have necessitated Banks, Financial Institutions and other Wealth Management Service providers to offer structured wealth management offerings to different customer segments.

With the undeniable growth in the affluent and high-net-worth-segments, financial advisers and institutions offering wealth management services are demanding robust and scalable technology platforms to address the diverse needs of their clients.

The new generation of customers is more investment-savvy and demand personal service, customized portfolios and a spectrum of investment options. This coupled with new regulatory issues have introduced a plethora of complexities in the Wealth Management process. Technology is critical to helping advisors meet the needs of their growing client base and new regulatory responsibilities.

Hence, Wealth Management service providers have a requirement for an integrated technology solution fit that spans customer acquisition, portfolio planning & advice, portfolio execution, portfolio administration and portfolio monitoring & analysis.

**FLEXCUBE Private Banking** is a comprehensive tool which is designed to provide a single platform to **record, track** and **manage** the overall wealth of a customer, across a range of asset classes and instruments.

The system consists of various modules that enable the users like banks, financial institutions and brokerage houses to create, preserve and transfer the customer wealth and help them to maximize their returns.

## 2. Customer Related Menus

### 2.1 Customer Dashboard

#### Description:

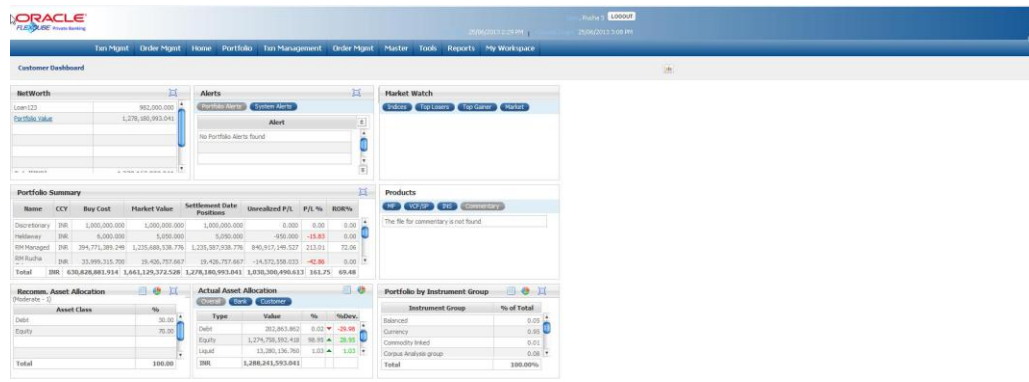
When a Customer logs into FCPB system the Customer dashboard page is launched as shown below.

Customer dashboard is a snap shot of various details like demographic details, Net worth, Recommended Portfolio, Actual Asset Allocation, Portfolio Summary and Alerts.

#### User Access Levels:

**Customer:** The moment customer user logs in and if the user risk profile is updated, the system directs the user to the customer dashboard page. Another option for the user is to choose the home from the top menu and navigate to the dashboard.

#### Screen:



**Figure 2.1: Customer Dashboard Screen – Customer Login**

#### Navigation:

**Customer:** The moment customer logs in and if his risk profile is updated in the system he will land on the customer dashboard page, else he can choose the home from the top menu and he can navigate to the dashboard

Main Tables	Description	Features
-------------	-------------	----------



Main Tables	Description	Features
NetWorth	<p>It displays network details of the client i.e. details to all the accounts held internal to bank that are not part of portfolio investment. It also displays the network details of the Household members on clicking of the Household icon located below the Sum Insured field.</p> <p>The Portfolio Value hyperlink opens up the Portfolio Maintenance screen (a quicklink to Portfolio Maintenance)</p> <p>The blow up icon located at the top right hand corner of the Network portlet opens up the 'Statement of Loans and Liabilities' pop up which gives the detailed statement of Liability type of Banking Products.</p>	<p>Also displays the sum Insured for a client. If the Sum Insured field is hyperlinked and it opens up a pop up on clicking of the hyperlink to display the details of the insurance taken by the client. In case, the policy held by the customer is of type ULIP, Fund value will be hyperlinked. On clicking the hyperlink the user gets to see the details of funds under that particular ULIP.</p>
Alerts	System as well as Portfolio Alerts	<p>System Alerts-&gt; For e.g.-Birth-dates, Anniversary, Product maturity dates, Restriction maturity, Premium due date</p> <p>Portfolio Alerts-&gt; For e.g. - Portfolio returns, Deviations from benchmark configured for every client.</p>
Market Watch	Gives the various details about the financial markets under various tabs: Indices, Top losers , top gainers etc	Top losers would give the top stock losers for the day where as gainers would reflect the top stock gainers for the day etc.

Main Tables	Description	Features
Recommended Asset Allocation	Displays the asset allocation which is recommended to the client after assessing the risk appetite and assigning the risk score to the client	Option to view the details in the form of graph or table. He can also directly view the simulator screen by clicking the simulator icon there. The user can also view the multi-dimensional model asset allocation recommended to the client.
Actual Asset Allocation	<p>Displays the present asset allocation of the client.</p> <p>If the Asset Class Decomposition flag is set to Yes then this tab displays the Asset Class values after considering sub-constituent values. The deviation percentage (if any) will also include the values of sub-constituents.</p> <p>If the flag is set to No then system does not consider the sub-constituent values.</p>	
Portfolio Summary	<p>Displays the summary of the portfolios that the client holds.</p> <p>The system also displays the inventory position based on value date under the Value Date Positions column. If value date is blank then system considers the trade date as value date.</p>	Details like portfolio currency, market values, buy cost, Value Date Positions, Unrealized P/L, P/L, and ROR are displayed

Main Tables	Description	Features
Portfolio by Instrument Group	Displays the portfolios aggregated based on Instrument analysis group.	The investor can navigate to Portfolio Analysis screen by clicking the quick link to provided on top right hand side of the section. Also the user has an option to view Portfolio by instrument group in a graphical or tabular form.
Products	Gives a list of different products recommended by the bank under various instrument type like: Insurance, SP, Equity etc. The	

## 2.2 View Profile

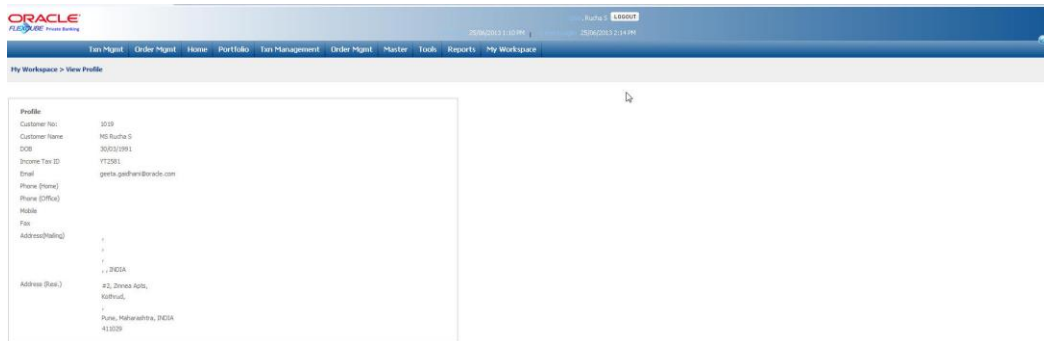
### Description:

The screen enables the user to own profile. This is display only screen and the customer cannot modify the details in the screen.

### User Access Levels:

**Customer:** Only the logged in customer can view his/her own profile by accessing this screen.

## **Screen:**



***Figure 2.2: View Profile Screen for Customer***

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system as Customer, select My Workspace → View Profile from the top menu.

## **2.3 RM Details**

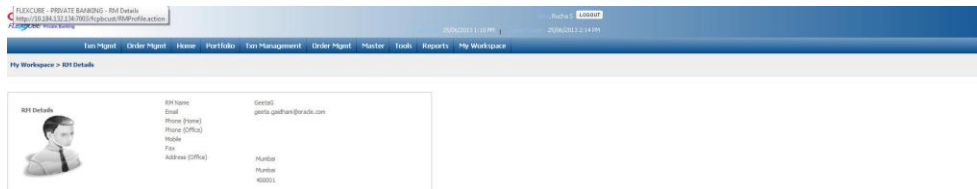
### **Description:**

The screen enables the user to view his/her RM details. In addition to this the screen also displays the details of Backup RM applicable if any.

### **User Access Levels:**

**Customer:** The customer can view the Primary RM and Back RM details by accessing this screen.

## **Screen:**



**Figure 2.3: RM Details Screen for Customer**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system as Customer, select My Workspace → RM Details Screen from the top menu.

The system displays the details like RM Name, Email, Phone (Home/Office), Mobile Fax and Address in the screen. In addition to this, system also displays the RM photograph if available.

## **2.4 Voluntary Corporate Action**

### **Description:**

The screen enables the user to fill the Corporate Action questionnaire responses if any Corporate Action questionnaire is pending. When the CA is declared for any particular instrument, the customers satisfying the criteria to fill the CA questionnaire receives a mail asking to login and answer the CA related questionnaire. Once the customer makes his/her choice and enters response, he is not allowed to modify the responses again.

### **User Access Levels:**

**Customer & Operations:** Only the person designated as Operations or Customer can access this screen. The idea behind making the CA questionnaire available to the Operations user was that the Operations person should be able to print the CA questionnaire and send it to clients who are not able to access the internet and once the client faxes bank the responses, they should be able to fill the responses on the client's behalf.

## **Screen:**

VCA ID	VCA Name	Instrument Name	Portfolio Name	Folio/Account No.	Record Date	Closure Date
0005	Corporate	HPFC120100 Current Holding Quantity: 130 Current Holding Amount: 17000	Self Managed	MF-120100	12/06/2012	25/06/2014
0005	Corporate	HPFC120100 Current Holding Quantity: 141621273 Current Holding Amount: 17000-000123	RM Managed	MF-120100	12/06/2012	25/06/2014
0005	Corporate	HPFC120100 Current Holding Quantity: 5.971284 Current Holding Amount: 1000.00048	My Invest	MF-120100	12/06/2012	25/06/2014

**Figure 2.4: Voluntary Corporate Action Screen for Customer**

### Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system as Customer, select My Workspace → Voluntary Corporate Action from the top menu.

Field	Description	Mandatory (Y/N)
ID	Displays the Voluntary Corporate Action ID	N
Voluntary Corporate Action Name	Displays the name and type of Voluntary CA. It is displayed with hyperlink on click of which the system displays the corresponding CA Questionnaire.	N
Instrument Name	Displays the name of the instrument for the given Voluntary CA	N
Portfolio Name	Displays the name of the customer portfolio	
Folio No	Displays the Folio No. for the given instrument for which the CA has been declared.	
Record Date	Displays the record date of voluntary CA	
Closure Date	Displays the closure date for voluntary CA. After this date the customer will not be able to view the questionnaire.	

To view the questionnaire, click on the desired VCA Name hyperlink.

### Screen:

**Figure 2.5: Voluntary Corporate Action Questionnaire Screen for Customer**

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, system displays the message 'Please note that your responses will be submitted and you cannot change your responses again. Do you want to proceed?' and saves the questionnaire.

## 2.5 **Send Message**

### **Description:**

The Customer can send messages to the RM through send message screen. The customer can enter free text in the subject field and also, can choose the interaction category and product type from a list of drop down.

The customer has an option to type in free text in the message text box.

On clicking the clear button, the screen clears all that was entered in the text boxes gets wiped off, along with the selections done for interaction category and product type.

On clicking the send button, the message is sent to the selected RM.

### **User Access Levels:**

**Customer:** The customer can view the send message screen by accessing this screen.

### **Screen:**

**Figure 2.6: Send Message Screen**

**Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system as Customer, select My Workspace Send message Screen from the top menu.

## **2.6 Model Portfolio**

**Description:**

The FCPB system allows the user to create the model portfolio for various risk profiles.

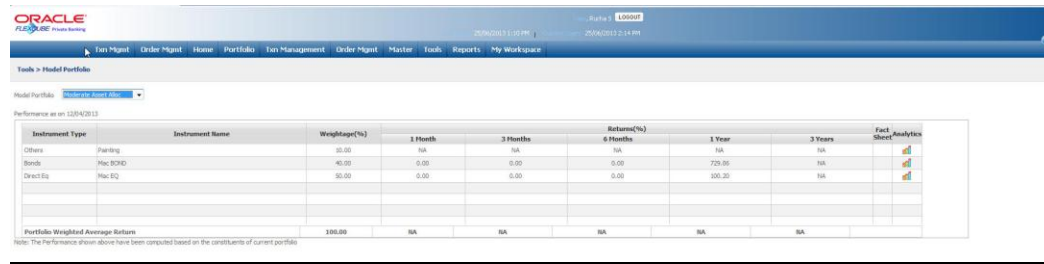
The performance of the model portfolio is computed at the end of each week. The system computes the performance only for the bank specified model portfolios. For customer specific model portfolios, this performance computation is not available. Also, the system presents the user with the performance of the model portfolio for last one year at any point of time.

**User Access levels:**

**Customer** can access the model portfolio screen.



## Screen:



**Figure 2.7: Model Portfolio Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging into the system, select Tools → Model Portfolio

Field	Description	Mandatory (Y/N)
Instrument Type	Displays the instrument type for which performance is computed	Y
Instrument Name	Displays the name of the instrument for which the performance is computed	Y
Weightage (%)	Displays the total weightage allocated to corresponding instrument for the selected portfolio for which performance is computed.	Y
Returns (%)		
1 Month	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for the first month	Y
3 Months	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 3 months	Y
6 Months	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 6 months	Y
1 Year	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 1 year	Y
3 Years	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 3 years	Y
Fact Sheet	Enables the user to view the fact sheet details by clicking on the Fact Sheet icon	
Analytics	Enables the user to view instrument analytics details by clicking on the Analytics icon	

Field	Description	Mandatory (Y/N)
Portfolio Weighted Average Returns (%)	Displays the weighted average returns of the portfolio for the corresponding time period	

If the returns are not available for any model portfolio constituents, the system displays NA. This will happen in case when a new instrument is added to the portfolio which is just 3 months old. For such instrument, the returns columns beyond 3 months will display NA on performance computation.

Also, weighted average return of the portfolio displays NA if all the instruments in the portfolio do not have the complete price details.

In case of bonds that are a part of the portfolio, the coupon rate is used to compute the returns. However, if the bonds are zero coupon bonds, the system does not compute any returns and displays NA.

Also, if a bonus is issued for an equity share, while calculating the returns the system adjusts the price based on all the bonus ratios of the past.

## 2.7 **Customer Risk Profiler**

### **Description:**

The Risk Profiler screen under the Tools menu enables the user to do the Risk Profiling of the customer. Based on the Client Segment and Client IT Type, the system displays the particular set of questions and depending on the feedback received from the client, it allocates the particular risk score to the customer.

After filling in the questionnaire when the user clicks on the Calculate button, the system displays the Risk Profiler screen with Recommended Asset Allocation and performance of the model portfolio associated with the risk score with different set of messages as mentioned below:

### **User Access levels:**

**Customer** can access the Risk Profiler screen to view the Recommended Asset Allocation and performance.

### **Screen:**

**Figure 2.8 Risk Profiler Screen**

If there are instruments for which customers have holdings but no records in the Price table. For such instruments, the system does the following

- Check and list the instruments for which there is not even a single price record, but customers have holdings.
- For such instruments system checks for transactions across the customers.
- Pick the latest transaction from the above list and assign the transaction price as the instrument price, even if it is across a month.
- This price is used to update the price history table through historization process.

## 2.8 **Product Search**

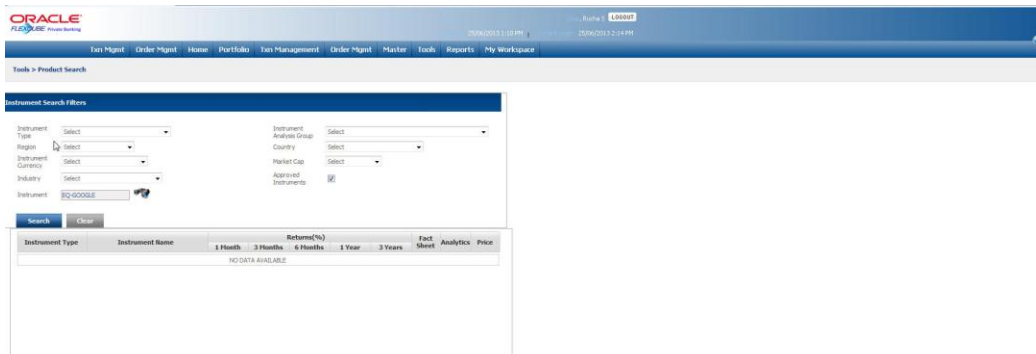
### **Description:**

The Product Search feature of FCPB enables the user to search for the desired products available in the system using various filters. The search result displays the products qualifying the given search criteria along with the instrument related details like factsheets, analytics data, price movements etc.

### **User Access Levels:**

**Customer** can access the Product Search screen.

### **Screen:**



**Figure 2.9: Product Search Screen**

## 2.9 **Fee Mandate**

### **Description:**

This screen comes up as soon as the customer logs in for the first time. Once the customer accepts the terms and conditions, the system allows the customer to place orders.

If the customer declines, then he is not allowed to place orders.

### **User Access Levels:**

**Customer** can access the Fee mandate screen.

### **Screen:**



**Figure 2.10: Fee Mandate Screen**

## 2.10 Change Password

**Description:** Change password helps to change the password for the logged in user. This menu is present across different logins.

**User Access Levels:**

**Customer** can use this screen to change password

**Screen:**



**Figure 2.11: Change Password Screen**

**Screen Navigation:** After logging in the system select Workspace → Change password from the top menu.

On clicking **Submit** the new password is saved in the system. Clicking clear button will clear the screen.

**Password Policy** - There are certain rules which the user needs to follow while changing the password

- The password should consist of minimum of 8 characters and maximum of 15 characters.
- It should consist of at least one numeric, one capital letter, one small letter, and one special character.

- The user can not choose previous three passwords as New Password.

Field	Description
Old Password	Enables the user to enter the old password
New Password	Enables the user to enter the new password
Confirm Password	Enables the user to enter the new password to confirm the same
Hint Question	Enables the user to enter the hint question
Hint Answer	Enables the user to enter the hint answer

## 2.11 Survey Questionnaire

### Description:

Once the RM sends the Survey Questionnaire to the customers satisfying the criteria, the questionnaires start appearing in My Workspace menu of customer login. The same customer may qualify for one or more surveys at a time if he/she satisfies each of the survey filter criteria.

As soon as the survey exceeds the expiry date, the system does not allow the customer to view that questionnaire.

### User Access Levels

**Customer:** only the Customer can view & fill the Survey Questionnaire before the Survey Expiry date.

### **Screen:**



**Figure 2.12: Survey Questionnaire Screen for Customer**

### **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system as Customer, select My Workspace → Survey Questionnaire from the top menu

Field	Description	Mandatory (Y/N)
Survey Name	Displays the survey names with hyperlink that is pending for the logged in customer	
Closure Date	Indicates the survey closure date for the logged in customer after which the survey will no longer be available for the customer to fill	
Status	Indicates the survey status	

To view the details of the questionnaire, click on the appropriate Survey Name hyperlink.

#### Screen:

**Figure 2.13: Survey Questionnaire**

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the message 'Please note that your responses will be submitted and you cannot change your responses again. Do you want to proceed?' and saves the questionnaire.

---

## 3. Portfolio Management

### 3.1 Introduction

FCPB portfolio management offers a comprehensive management and administration solution for the customer's entire portfolio. The user has the ability to capture investment details in all major asset classes and customer's portfolio has its own investment mandate reflecting his risk profile and asset allocation.



This section explains portfolio management capabilities for all the instrument types supported by FCPB, but only those Instrument Types would be available to the bank as per their entitled licenses.

Portfolio Management provides:

- An account for customer's entire portfolio
- Daily portfolio monitoring and decision making transparency
- Flexibility to adjust customer's portfolio at any time if customer's goals, lifestyle preferences or investment strategies change.
- Regular performance updates and completely transparent portfolio reporting.

#### Key Features

Features
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Choice of creating several portfolios for a customer</li><li>• Flexibility of creating multi currency portfolio</li><li>• Choice of associating a benchmark for the portfolio</li><li>• Choice of selecting method of calculation : FIFO or WAC</li></ul>
Online reporting, allowing user to view their portfolio holdings and transactions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• For each instrument type</li><li>• Separately in each portfolio</li></ul>
Online analysis based on their composition across different dimensions like asset class, industry, currency, region, market capitalization and instrument type



<p>Daily reports showing for each holding as well as for each portfolio</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performance</li> <li>• Dividends /Distributions</li> </ul>
<p>Facilitates decision making through what-if analysis across multiple dimensions such as asset class, instrument, region, industry and market capitalization</p>
<p>Facilitates to stay informed with custom portfolio alerts.</p>

### **Key Benefits**

**Transparency:** User can view all investments, transactions online, allowing them to track movement in their portfolio.

**Diversification:** Allows users to have diversified portfolio in many assets.

**Comprehensive reporting:** Our comprehensive reporting ensures that user is kept informed about the performance. User can view the performance reports either separately by portfolio, by instrument group and by asset class or in aggregate at customer level.

**Improved Operating Efficiencies:** Enhances portfolio Management decisions by the usage of portfolio analysis, performance and what-if simulations

### **A snapshot of the Module**

**True Multi Currency:** FLEXCUBE Private Banking is a true multi-currency portfolio tracking system that provides the flexibility to capture security, portfolio, customer and bank currency. A specific base currency is not required for currency transactions or holdings, the FCPB will convert the transaction amounts denominated in the security's currency to the portfolio currency as well as to the customer currency using a currency exchange rate.

Multi portfolio creation:

- Supports FIFO and weighted average cost basis
- Online revaluation using current market price

**Extensive Analysis Reporting Capabilities:** The FLEXCUBE Private Banking is unique in that its analysis capabilities are designed to meet the most demanding requirements. With a click of a button analysis based on the composition of the instruments are reported across different dimensions like Portfolio, Instrument Group, Asset class, Industry, Currency, Region, Market Capitalization and Instrument type.

**Performance Measurement Tools:** One of the defining factors in selection of a portfolio management system is the degree it enables a manager to set and meet performance goals. FLEXCUBE Private Banking provides return analytics based on Modified Dietz rate of return. Returns are calculated net of fees, using the trade date accounting and with accrued interest receivable.

**Simulation:** Simulation is a powerful tool allowing you to review how specific change in holdings will affect a portfolio's position before any trades are executed. Several holdings position can be reviewed simultaneously.

**Portfolio Alerts:** The alerts facilitate by providing the customer or the Relationship Manager a round-up of all the relevant information about their investments.

### **Weighted Average Cost**

As mentioned in the Admin & Ops User Manual, FCPB supports both the calculation methods FIFO (First In First Out) and WAC (Weighted Average Cost). The user can decide on the method of calculation based on the flag set at the Bank Parameters. If it is set as 'F', it uses FIFO method and if set as 'W', uses WAC method.

In WAC, for any new buy transaction, the system adds the buy cost of new transaction to the previous holding buy cost to arrive at new holding buy cost and then divides the total cost by the holding quantity to arrive at Weighted Average Buy Cost – WAC.

On the other hand, in case of sell transaction, system reduces the holding buy cost by the amount received after multiplying Sell Quantity with Weighted Average Buy Cost and then calculates the new weighted average cost by dividing the new total cost by the holding quantity.

### **Weighted Average Cost for back dated transaction**

The FCPB system also calculates WAC for back-dated transactions. In this case, the system calculates revised WAC based on the back-dated 'Buy' transaction and for all subsequent 'Buy' transactions. The system also takes care of realized P & L, short term/long term capital gain/loss for all subsequent sale transactions.

While doing back dated transaction calculation, the system checks the date and time of transaction and accordingly calculates the revised WAC. If transaction time is not available it assumes that the back-dated transaction as the last transaction for the day (transaction date) and accordingly calculates revised WAC, realized gain/loss and short term/long term capital gain/loss on subsequent sale transactions. In case of back-dated transaction, system re-computes AUM and Commission also.

## **3.2 Portfolio Creation and Maintenance**

### **Description:**

A portfolio is required to manage and record all the holdings of a customer. FLEXCUBE Private Banking allows the user to maintain the holdings in a portfolio across a range of asset classes as defined in the system. The user can create several portfolios under portfolio types – Self Managed and Heldaway, different currencies or different benchmarks, based on the needs. Creating portfolios of different currencies permit the user to track investments denominated in more than one currency, with the valuations converted to the portfolio base currency of user's choice.

### **Important Comprehension:**

Before proceeding to understand about the portfolio maintenance, analysis, performance. It is important for us to understand the concept of currency in the FLEXCUBE Private Banking.

FCPB permits the user to track investments denominated in more than one currency, with the purchase amounts and valuations converted to the portfolio currency as well as to the customer preferred currency. Thus the FLEXCUBE Private Banking accomplishes multi currency portfolio management by accounting for transactions in Security, portfolio as well at a customer currency.

The term security currency refers to the currency in which a given security is purchased and sold and in which it receives corporate benefits (such as dividend).

In multi currency portfolios, transaction amounts denominated in the security's currency are converted to the portfolio currency using a currency exchange rate. Thus at the portfolio level, the portfolio is valued and profits are computed in the portfolio currency. The portfolio currency must be specified for a portfolio at the time the portfolio is created.

In addition to converting transactions and valuations from a security currency denomination to a portfolio currency denomination, FCPB permits the user to maintain and generate analysis and reports in a third currency 'the customer currency'. At the customer level, all the transaction amounts denominated in the security's currency are converted to the customer currency using a currency exchange rate. This customer currency must be specified at the time the customer is created.

Please note that the closing exchange rate/s on the corresponding transaction dates is used for converting the transactions into their corresponding values in the portfolio and customer currency. However, the Market values displayed in the portfolio and customer currency across all the portfolio maintenance/analysis/simulation screens are computed and displayed utilizing the online exchange rate.

### **User Access Levels:**

**Customer:** can add and modify only the Held Away and Self Managed portfolios but can view other portfolios.

### 3.2.1 Portfolio Creation

#### Screen:

***Figure 3.1: Portfolio Creation Screen***

#### **Screen Navigation:**

1. After you login, the portfolio creation screen can be accessed through the Portfolio and Maintenance sub menu.
2. Click on the **Add Portfolio** button in the Portfolio Maintenance screen.


**Entering the details of the portfolio creation screen:** As seen the screen is dividend under three main categories: - Portfolio addition, joint holder details and nomination. While some of the attributes (for instance the benchmark) can be changed while maintaining a portfolio, there are some attributes (such as portfolio type and currency) that cannot be changed once entered and saved. Enter all the valid inputs into all the mandatory fields in order to save the portfolio.



After entering the details, save the portfolio by clicking the **Save** button. Click the **Cancel** button to go back to portfolio maintenance screen. To access any other screens please use the top horizontal menu bar.

The fields have been briefly described below:


#### **Portfolio Maintenance**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio Name	Enables the user to enter appropriate portfolio name.	Y


Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio Type	<p>The user can choose a valid portfolio type from the list of values that are available. Self Managed and Held Away Portfolio will be displayed in the list of values.</p> <p>The self-managed group will contain portfolios whose assets are captured through the bank but managed independently by customer.</p> <p>Held Away portfolios are those which are owned and managed by the customer but not processed through the bank.</p>	Y
Default	When the user selects this check box, the current portfolio is selected as Default portfolio for the selected portfolio type. If this is the only single portfolio for the Portfolio type, it is automatically selected as default portfolio	Y
Portfolio Currency	<p>The user can use the drop-down list to select the currency from the several currencies displayed in the list. The Portfolio Currency is the currency in which the portfolio is valued, in which realized Gain/Loss are computed and reported.</p> <p> Once the Portfolio Base Currency is selected for a portfolio, you cannot change it later to another currency. The reason for this restriction is that all exchange rates would have to be changed for all transactions and valuations in the portfolio, if the Portfolio Currency is changed.</p>	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio Benchmark	<p>Click  and choose a benchmark from the list of benchmarks available. Benchmark allows the user to compare performance of the portfolio versus performance of selected benchmark indices. The indices displayed in the search screen are market indices (eg: S&amp;P 500) which are maintained by the administrator.</p> <p> The user can choose the Composite Benchmark while adding new portfolio.</p>	Y
Model Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate asset allocation model from the drop-down list for the portfolio in context. The drop-down displays the list of the model portfolios that belongs to the same client segment as that of the logged-in customer.	N
Portfolio Description	Multi line text box where you can enter a description for the portfolio.	N
Mode Of Operation	The user can set up each portfolio by choosing a valid mode of operation from the list of values available. Portfolios can be single or jointly held or could be operated by either or survivor. If the account is singly held, the user cannot specify the Joint Holder Details as the fields will get disabled. However, if the mode of operation is joint or either or survivor as the mode of operation, selection of joint holder details is mandatory.	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Nomination	The mode of operation and the nominee details would also be useful while entering orders for buying/selling instruments for such portfolios through the FCPB Order Capture screens. This information regarding the mode of operation and nominee details would be passed along with the orders through an interface to an external order management system for execution. (Details of which are discussed in the section on Order Management)	Y

 If the user creates a new Portfolio of a Portfolio Type for which there is an earlier existing portfolio, the system displays a message 'One Default portfolio exists for this type, check Default checkbox to make this portfolio default'. If the user clicks on the Default Checkbox, the newly created Portfolio becomes Default Portfolio for that type; while the earlier one no longer remains the default

#### Joint Holder Details

 On selection of any other mode of operation, apart from Single held, it is mandatory for you to capture the details of the secondary holder

Field	Description	Mandatory
1st Joint Holder 2nd Joint Holder 3rd Joint Holder	User needs to select the existing customer as a joint holder from the drop-down list. User can select maximum of three joint holders to any portfolio which are existing customers in FCPB.	N
Allow Order Placement	Enables the user to grant the rights to place the Order for selected portfolio	N

#### NOMINEE

Field	Description	Mandatory
1st Nominee 2nd Nominee 3rd Nominee	The text box fields have been provided to capture the nominee details. User can add maximum of three nominees to the selected portfolio.	N


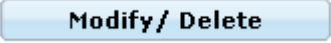
Field	Description	Mandatory
Relationship	Three drop-down lists have been provided for capturing the relationship of each nominee with the account holder.	Mandatory if a nominee name is entered
Ownership%	Three text box fields have been provided for capturing ownership % of each nominee for the selected portfolio.	Mandatory if a nominee name is entered

### 3.2.2 Portfolio Maintenance - Modify/Delete


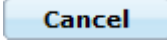
#### Screen Navigation:

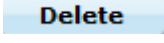
1. After the customer logs in, the portfolio creation screen can be accessed through the Portfolio and Maintenance sub menu. Select the portfolio you want to Modify/Delete by checking the radio button.

2. Click on the  button in the Portfolio Maintenance screen.

 A customer is not allowed to Modify/Delete RM managed or discretionary portfolio. This is done through disabling the  button as soon as the radio button is selected for RM managed or Discretionary portfolio.

**Entering the details for portfolio modification/deletion:** On selection of a portfolio and clicking the modify button in the portfolio maintenance screen, screen defaults all the details of the selected portfolio in the corresponding fields in the maintenance screen. As observed the screen is similar to the portfolio creation screen. Hence all the field validations applicable to the portfolio creation screen are also applicable to this screen. However, unlike the portfolio creation screen some fields in the maintenance screen (portfolio name, type and currency) cannot be modified.

Click the  button to save the modifications you have specified. If there are any mandatory fields that you have not entered, the system will not save your modification, but prompt you to specify the same before you click the modify button again. Click  to clear all the modifications entered in the screen and the user will be directed back to the Maintenance screen. By selecting the cancel button, all the modifications done will be lost and the system will replenish the field attributes as existed prior to your initiation of the current modification request. To access any other screens please use the top horizontal menu bar.

The user can also delete a portfolio by using the  button. The system prompts you to confirm the deletion before finally deleting the portfolio.





If the portfolio selected for deletion is Default portfolio, the system will not allow the user to delete the same until some other portfolio is selected as Default.




The user is permitted to delete a portfolio only if there are no holdings in the portfolio and if there are no orders in open status (orders waiting for confirmation from the external interface) in the portfolio.

The fields have been briefly described below:

#### Portfolio Maintenance

Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio Name	The portfolio name is displayed here	Display only
Portfolio Type	The type of portfolio is available as a non editable field	Display only
Default	The selected check box reveals that portfolio is a default portfolio	Display only
Portfolio Currency	The currency of the portfolio is available as a display field.	Display only
Portfolio Benchmark	<p>Click  and select any other benchmark from the list of benchmarks available. As mentioned earlier, Benchmark is used for comparing performance.</p> <p> Please note that as performance is computed during the End of Day process (refer to the section on performance for further details); the altered benchmark and its associated performance can be seen in the screen only after the End Of day process is completed.</p>	N
Portfolio Description	The user can change the description for the portfolio entered earlier.	N

Field	Description	Mandatory
Mode Of Operation	<p>The user can modify the mode of operation.</p> <p>If the user had opted earlier for single held portfolio and wants to modify it either to a joint or either or survivor mode of operation, the system will force the user to capture the secondary holder details.</p> <p>In case of a vice versa scenario wherein the user had earlier opted for the secondary or the either or survivor mode of operation and now wants to change it to singly held portfolio, then the secondary holder details captured earlier will no longer be applicable and the corresponding fields for the secondary holder will get disabled.</p> <p>The system also allows the user to modify the nominee details.</p> <p> The change in the mode of operation will be applicable only to the orders which will be placed subsequent to the modification. The change will not impact the orders which are in open status (orders waiting for confirmation from the external interface).</p>	Y

### Secondary Holder

All the validations applicable at the time of portfolio creation are applicable during modification. Similar to the mode of operation any modification done to the joint holder details will be applicable only to the orders that will be placed post the modification. The change will not be updated to any of the orders which are in open status.

### Nominee

Modified nominee details will only be applicable to the orders that will be placed hence forth, post the modification and will not update the orders which are in open status.

Field	Description	Mandatory
1st Nominee	Enables the user to modify the nominee names	N
2nd Nominee		
3rd Nominee		

Field	Description	Mandatory
Relationship	Enables the user to modify the nominee relationships	N
Ownership%	Enables the user to modify the ownership % of the nominees.	N

### 3.3 Portfolio Valuation

#### Description:

The portfolio valuation option offers an expanded, detailed overview of all portfolios at a glance. Portfolio valuation maintains a record of the current market value of the different types of instruments in a portfolio. Each valuation record further represents the security holdings and their associated values as of the valuation date. A list of all the security transactions can be seen by clicking on the security holdings. These are clearly listed in terms of execution details and transaction type (purchase or sale).

The Portfolio Valuation feature of FCPB system is further enhanced to value Customer and Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices. The system identifies the Proprietary Portfolio by the Client Id of Proprietor set at bank parameter level and treats all the portfolios linked to this client id as Proprietary Portfolios.

To accomplish this, FCPB stores two set of prices for a single instrument with Bid, Mid & Ask price separately. And the valuation is done based on the respective Bid Prices of proprietary and customer portfolios.

#### Customer:

The customer can view the valuation details for the RM Managed, Self Managed, Discretionary and Held Away Portfolios.

#### Screen:

The screenshot displays the Oracle FLEXcube Portfolio Summary interface. It features a top navigation bar with tabs for 'RM Managed', 'Self Managed', 'Discretionary', and 'Held Away'. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Portfolio Summary' and 'Portfolio Details'. The 'Portfolio Summary' section shows a table with columns for Name, Description, Type, CCY, Amount, and % of Total. The 'Portfolio Details' section shows a table with columns for Name, DP ID, CCY, Buy Price, Qty, Total Buy Cost, Market Price, Market Value, Value Date, and Quick Launch. The 'Portfolio Summary' table includes a sub-table for 'RM Managed' and 'Self Managed' portfolios. The 'Portfolio Details' table includes a sub-table for 'RM Managed' and 'Self Managed' portfolios. The 'Portfolio Summary' table shows a total of 1,663,125,311 for RM Managed and 100.00% for Self Managed. The 'Portfolio Details' table shows a total of 33,999,715,798 for RM Managed and 100.00% for Self Managed.

Portfolio Summary					
Name	Description	Type	CCY	Amount	% of Total
RM Managed		RM	USD	1,663,125,311	100.00%
Self Managed		SM	USD	100.00%	100.00%
<b>Total</b>				<b>1,663,125,311</b>	<b>100.00%</b>

Portfolio Details								
Name	DP ID	CCY	Buy Price	Qty	Total Buy Cost	Market Price	Market Value	Value Date
RM Managed		USD						
Self Managed		USD						
<b>Total</b>					<b>33,999,715,798</b>		<b>100.00%</b>	

### **Figure 3.2: Portfolio Valuation Screen**

#### **Screen Navigation:**

1. After you login, the portfolio creation screen can be accessed through the Portfolio and Maintenance sub menu.

#### **How to Read the Screen:**

1. The screen displays a single tab when the user reaches the screen.
2. This tab, on the top left corner of the screen displays the record of all portfolios along with their market value. All the records of the portfolio are presented in their corresponding portfolio currency. This tab also comprises of the buttons to add/modify/delete a portfolio, the procedure and information of which are elucidated in the preceding section.
3. The valuation of a particular portfolio can be viewed by clicking on the hyperlink provided beneath each name of all the portfolios, results in display of an additional tab. This tab displays the market value for the different types of instruments. These instruments encompass the complete holdings of the selected customer in the particular portfolio being evaluated.

The system does not display the portfolios with zero buy cost and zero market value that exceeds the number of days specified in the bank parameters and also the portfolios with no transactions for no. of days mentioned in the bank parameters.

Currently the following instrument types are supported by FCPB; namely equity, mutual fund, structured product, commodities, bonds, PMS, insurance, derivatives such as futures and options, CASA and Time Deposits. The current and savings accounts will be categorized under an instrument type 'CASA' whereas the term deposit will fall under the instrument type 'TD'.

All the miscellaneous securities which cannot be categorized into any of the above defined instrument types can be classified into the instrument category 'others'.

Unless defined otherwise, the units or quantity of a security are dependent on a direct transaction. However for the purpose of portfolio analysis and simulation (elucidated in detail in the subsequent sections) the units of a security may also include units derived as underlying securities of one or more instruments. For instance, you can hold shares in ACC Cement either as an outcome of a direct purchase or as an indirect holding due to purchase of a Mutual Fund which in turn has ACC as one of its constituents. However, please note that the concept of holding underlying securities is applicable only for the instruments types Mutual Fund, PMS and Structured products.

Analogous to a Mutual Fund or a Structured product, for a PMS scheme, its constituents or sub constituents will be considered for the purpose of analysis. By referring 'sub constituents' we are indicating the constituents arising due to the scheme having a Mutual Fund as its constituents. Let us understand this with an example

Every new security, in FCPB needs to be added to the Instrument Master Table before it may be used in the portfolio records. The instrument master table contains the various related data for the security such as the instrument type, currency, region, industry and asset class.

- [illegible]

FCPB also enables the user to view the advice for each of the transaction entered into the system by clicking on the View Advice hyperlink in the pop-up that appears on click of respective instrument type hyperlink. The advice generated is different for POA and non-POA Customers and is based on the value of Power Of Attorney flag set at the customer level. These advices are sent either through fax, SMS or through e-mail communication mode.

 If any modification is done to the existing transaction then the system generates the revised advice with revised values.

ORACLE®

This tab also facilitates in the initiation of transactions for all the holdings across all the instrument type. Before proceeding to understand on the subject of 'Order Management' as delineated in FCPB, it is necessary for us to summarize our understanding on the different types of portfolios defined in the system. The customer has the option of creating multiple portfolios under the type Self Managed and Held Away. Self Managed portfolio is supposed to be managed by the customer independently; and an RM can create as well as transact on behalf of the customer in his 'Self Managed' portfolio. The Held Away portfolio facilitates in capturing the holdings which are held away from the bank. With the addition of held away assets you can have a single consolidated view of your customer's entire holdings.

The FCPB currently facilitates order management for the securities under the instrument type Mutual Fund, Insurance, Equity, Structured Products, Bonds, Forex, Futures, Options, and Commodities.

The trade affiliated orders for the securities under the instrument types Mutual Fund, Insurance, Equity, Structured Products, Bonds, Forex, Futures, Options, and Commodities can be initiated either through the Order Management screen (can be navigated from the main menu and is explained in detail in the section on Transaction Management) or through the current screen. However, the user can capture the post trade Buy & Sell transaction related data through the Transaction Management screen and needs to capture other instrument specific transactions like CA or modify in the market values through the current Portfolio Maintenance screen.

For a new security to be included in the portfolio, the user has to place orders through the Order Management screen or transactions through the Transaction Management Screen. All the corporate action related data for the RM Managed and Self Managed portfolios can be updated through the hyperlink provided in portfolio maintenance.

5. As the instrument price keeps on changing frequently, FCPB also enables the user to set up alerts to keep the track of changing market price associated with an instrument. These alerts can be set up by clicking on the hyperlink associated with Market Price which directs the user to Portfolio Alerts screen. The Portfolio Alerts screen would be defaulted to Instrument Price tab in this case.



If the logged in client is Proprietor Client Id, then system displays different instrument prices in this field as explain earlier in this section.

6. Additional assistance is provided to the user by making available an option to view the transaction history of each security. This can be done by clicking on the hyperlink provided under each security.





Securities, whose complete holdings are sold, will not be displayed in the tab. The same principle holds good for the instruments and portfolios. Instruments and portfolios with null holding will not be displayed in the tab.

The fields of each tab have been briefly described below:

#### PORTFOLIO SUMMARY

Field	Description	Mandatory
-------	-------------	-----------

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the portfolios of the selected customer are displayed. Each of the portfolio name is displayed with hyperlink. Click on the hyper link to view a tab which displays the valuation of all the instrument types encompassing the complete holdings of the customer in the selected portfolio. The details of this tab have been detailed later in this section.	Display only
Description	Displays the description entered during the creation of the portfolio.	Display only
Type	Displays the type of portfolio which was opted during its creation. A user logging in as customer will be able to view the RM Managed portfolio in addition to the Self Managed and Held Away Portfolios.	Display only
CCY	All the figures associated to the portfolio are displayed in the portfolio currency. For all the securities in the portfolio, the system converts and stores all the transaction amounts to their corresponding portfolio currency.	Display only
Sttl CCY	<p>This field displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument.</p> <p>If the instrument currency and settlement currency are different the system displays the settlement currency with hyperlink. When the user clicks on this hyperlink, the system displays the pop-up showing corresponding settlement currency details.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Amount	<p>The market value at the portfolio level represents the sum of the market values of all the securities across all the instrument types in the portfolio, denominated in the portfolio currency. Market value at the security level is computed as a product of quantity and market price.</p> <p>The market price for securities defined under the instrument type equity, mutual fund, traded bonds, structured product, commodities, will be received as external downloads or imports. The most recent manually updated price by the user will be considered for the securities under the instrument type insurance, others and non traded bonds.</p> <p>The surrender value would be considered as market price for the securities under the instrument type insurance.</p> <p> In the absence of market price, for the securities requiring market price to be manually updated, the system considers the acquisition price as the market price.</p> <p> The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation.</p>	Display only
% of Total	<p>Is the percentage composition of the portfolio under consideration with respect to all the portfolios.</p> <p>This figure is computed as</p> <p>Market value of the portfolio under consideration (in customer preferred currency)/ total market value of all the portfolios (in customer preferred currency)</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the portfolios would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency (computed as explained in the earlier section).



The system also provides the hyperlink to the Total Market Value on click of which following pop-up window appears.

**Screen:**

Name	Inst.CCY	Account No	Average Exchange Rate	Acquisition Cost in Portfolio CCY	Market Exchange Rate	Market Value in Portfolio CCY	Unrealized Gain/Loss in Portfolio CCY	Unrealized Gain/Loss due to CCY Impact	Unrealized Gain/Loss due to price Impact
CANARA	INR	1-6700	1.000	50,000.000	1.000	87,091.667	37,091.667	0.000	37,091.667
Equity Axis Mac	SGD	DP100-8900	36.660	32,999,315.700	36.660	18,333,666.000	-14,665,649.700	0.000	-14,665,649.700
Mac EQ	INR	DP100-8900	1.000	950,000.000	1.000	1,006,000.000	56,000.000	0.000	56,000.000
<b>Total (INR)</b>				<b>33,999,315.700</b>		<b>19,426,757.667</b>	<b>-14,572,558.033</b>	<b>0.000</b>	<b>-14,572,558.033</b>

**Figure 3.4: Gain Loss Summary in Portfolio Currency Pop up**

The pop-up displays the acquisition cost, market value and unrealized gain/loss in portfolio currency. In addition, the system also provides the details of unrealized gain/loss due to currency and price impacts.


As explained earlier, on clicking the name of any of the portfolios of the customer, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed valuation of the portfolio at the instrument level.

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Type	All instrument types encompassing total holdings in the chosen portfolio of the customer are displayed. Each type of instrument in the tab has a hyper link. Click on the hyper link to view a tab displaying detailed valuation of all the securities in the selected instrument type. The details of this tab have been detailed in the next table.	Display only
Amount	The market value at the instrument level represents the sum of the market values of all the securities in the particular instrument type denominated in the portfolio currency.	Display only
% of Total	It is the percentage composition of the type of instrument under consideration with respect to the total value of all the instrument types.	Display only

Again, at the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency (computed as explained in the earlier section).



Field	Description	Mandatory
Buy Price	<p>The buy price is determined at by using the weighted average cost methodology for each trading account. However, the important point to be noted is that the weighted average cost methodology is pertinent only for the remaining purchase transactions in the portfolio, subsequent to application of the first-in, first-out (FIFO) rule for all the sale transactions in the particular trading account of the portfolio.</p> <p>The average cost requires you to determine the average cost per share – total amount invested divided by the total number of shares held.</p> <p>Let's say you have bought the following shares</p> <p>01/01/2007 100 yahoo shares at 10\$ each</p> <p>02/01/2007 100 yahoo shares at 20\$ each</p> <p>The average price in this case would be 200 yahoo shares at 15\$ each</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
	<p>A FIFO rule is an accounting methodology wherein if the user holds a security of the same class which has been acquired on different dates, the security acquired at the earlier time is deemed to be disposed off first. In other words, it is assumed that for the securities of the same class, the securities purchased first are sold first.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>Jan 15th bought 1,000 Nestle shares for €1.27 per share  Jan 28th bought 200 Nestle shares for €1.90 per share  Feb 2nd bought 500 Nestle shares for €2.54 per share  Feb 15th sold 1,500 Nestle shares for €3.81 per share.</p> <p>Sold 1,500 shares for €5715.00</p> <p>As per FIFO</p> <p>1,000 @ €1.27 €1270.00  200 @ €1.90 €380.00  300 @ €2.54 €762.00 will be adjusted against the sale.</p> <p>Hence the buy price would be of balance shares: 200 acquired on Feb 2nd @ €2.54 per share.</p> <p>Now, if on Feb 28th additional 500 shares were purchased @ 3.06</p>	
	<p>The buy price, using the weighted average price, would now be computed as</p> $((200 \times 2.54) + (500 \times 3.06)) / 700$ <p> Cash corporate actions (dividend) will not be considered while computing buy price.</p> <p>The stock corporate actions viz. bonus stock dividends are deemed to have been acquired on the record date and at a nil price. The treatment for shares acquired under a rights issue is the same as for a bonus issue except that an allowance has to be made for the amount paid to acquire the additional shares.</p>	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Qty	<p>As mentioned earlier, the units will be calculated after the application of the FIFO accounting rule for each trading account.</p> <p>In addition to the units purchased, additional units received due to stock corporate actions will also be considered while determining the units.</p> <p>The orders entered for purchase /sale of securities through the FCPB Order Management System and which are in open status will not be considered while determining the quantity.</p>	Display only
Total Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity (mentioned above).	Display only
Market Price	<p>The market price for securities will be received as online update from external data vendors.</p> <p>In a scenario where market price is not received/ updated in the system at end of day then system will consider the previous day or previous received price for valuation and analysis.</p> <p>The Market Price is hyperlinked, on click of which the system directs the user to Portfolio Alerts screen to set up the alerts as per requirement.</p> <p>The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation.</p>	Display only
Market Value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.	Display only
Value Date	<p>Displays the date on which the price was received for determining the market value.</p> <p>The system also displays the time at which the last price was received for determining the market value.</p>	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Quick Launch	<p>This field displays the links to Buy, Sell the securities. The links are available for all the equity securities in this tab. The field also displays an additional link 'CA' for including corporate action related data for portfolios.</p> <p>On selection of any of the above links, the user is directed to the corresponding screens with pre-filled information of the selected security.</p> <p>The screens associated to these links have been explained in depth in the section on Transaction Management.</p> <p>On clicking the Buy/Sell hyperlink, the user navigates to the Order management or Transaction management screen. This depends on the way portfolio type maintenance has been set up.</p>	The action buttons will be disabled for a Customer viewing the securities held in a RM Managed portfolio

### **Equity Corporate Action**

#### **User Access Level:**

**CUST:** The person who is logged in as Customer can add/modify the details of Corporate Actions announced by the companies/institution.



Customer login allows to add/modify the corporate action details only for Self managed Portfolio

## Screen:

**Figure 3.6: Equity: Corporate Action Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After you login as CUST user, select Portfolio Maintenance → Equity and then click on the CA hyperlink.

Field	Description	Mandatory
Customer Details		
Portfolio Name	Displays the portfolio name	Y
Security Details		
Security Name	Displays the name of the security for which the CA has been declared	Y
Currency	Displays the currency of the of the security for which the CA has been declared	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the currency of the security for which the CA has been declared	Y
DP-ID-Client ID	Displays the default account id for the customer in context	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Corporate Actions		
Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate CA type from the Type drop-down list	Y
Record Date	Enables the user to enter appropriate record date	Y
Transaction Date	Enables the user to enter appropriate transaction date	Y
Settlement Date	Enables the user to enter appropriate settlement date. By default, the settlement date is auto-populated with transaction date.	Y
Amount	Enables the user to enter the dividend amount per unit if the selected CA type is Dividend.	Y
Tax	Enables the user to enter the appropriate tax for the corresponding corporate action.	Y
Dividend Percentage	Enables the user to enter the Dividend percentage per unit if the selected CA type is Dividend.	Y
Ratio	Enables the user to enter the appropriate Corporate Action ratio for the corresponding instrument This field is enabled only for Stock Dividend and Bonus CA types..	Y
New Shares Issued	Enables the user to enter the appropriate no. of new shares issued. This field is enabled only for Stock Dividend and Bonus CA types.	Y
Price/Share	Enables the user to enter the appropriate price of the share per unit. This field is displayed only if CA type Right is selected.	Y
Rights Bought	Enables the user to enter the appropriate rights bought. This field is displayed only if CA type Right is selected.	Y



Field	Description	Mandatory
Exchange Rate	Enables the user to enter the appropriate exchange rate. This field is enabled only if Instrument and Settlement currency is different.	Y
Issuance Fee	Enables the user to enter the appropriate Issuance Fee	N
Custody Fee	Enables the user to enter the appropriate custody fee. This field is enabled only if the 'Charge Custody Fee on CA' flag is set to 'Y' at instrument type level and if it is amount based CA.	N

### Processing Logic for Equity Order Capture:

The system follows the below logic to process Equity Order Capture:

1. For security, quantity is mentioned in multiples of regular lot size, If not mentioned, the system displays an error message.
2. You can enter an order with a disclosed quantity less than or equal to the order quantity.
3. Conditions for the order price: prices are in multiples of the tick size for a particular security.
  - **Market Order:** The price and the trigger price fields are disabled.
  - **Stop Loss:** If you select this option, you must specify the trigger price in the 'Trigger Price' field. However, it is optional to indicate the price in the 'Price' field. If the price is not specified, then the system considers the trigger price as the price for the order. For buy SL orders, the trigger price is less than or equal to the 'Price'. Similarly, for sell SL orders, the trigger price is greater than or equal to the 'Price'.
  - **Limit Price:** If you select this option, the system disables the 'Trigger Price'. However; you are allowed to specify desired price. The price mentioned is in the multiple of the tick size for that particular security.
4. Sale transaction is initiated only for the balance shares available for a particular security in a particular portfolio of a customer. For multiple sale orders, initiated on the same business day for the same security of a customer's portfolio, the system validates the balance quantity considering:
  - The current holding of the customer
  - The open quantities for all the orders with open and partially executed status in the order book
5. In the Portfolio Maintenance screen, the Equity Details section lists of Equities with Customer Holdings. If the OMS QUICK LAUNCH check box is checked at Bank Parameters (Portfolio and Order Related Tab) level, then the links for Buy/Sell are available under the Quick Launch column.

For Customer Login, if 'Can Transact Online' check box is unchecked and customer clicks on the corresponding Buy/Sell hyperlinks for the equity, then the customer will not be allowed to place an order for the same. The system then displays an error message as "You cannot place an order for this Instrument. Please contact your Relationship Manager".

6. For "Timed Orders", the expiry date must be valid business date. If the expiry date is on a holiday, the system displays an error message and displays the next valid business date. You can modify the default date, if needed.
7. The expiry date must be stored in the order book and is cancelled manually.
8. The system generates an alert message on CUST dash board, two days prior to order expiry date.
9. All revisions to the order, including the expiry date revision are specified in the order audit trail.
10. Orders marked as "Executed" cannot be modified.
11. If the value of 'secondary market allowed' is 'No' in GIMS, exchange value is not mandatory. If only one exchange is defined in GIMS, then the system defaults the value.
12. Once the order status is Matched or Settled, the system generates transaction advice.
13. If the system date is in the range of the selected instrument's, 'New Issue Start Date' and 'New Issue End Date', then the system qualifies the instrument as an IPO.
14. Once the selected instrument is classified as an 'IPO', the system performs the following on the order capture screen:
  - Defaults 'Transaction' value as 'BUY'
  - Defaults 'Order Type' value as 'IPO'
  - Defaults 'Time condition' value as 'GTC'
15. The status of the order is updated as 'Executed', if 'Partially Executed Order / PEI' is modified, then the modified order quantity is same as Executed quantity.

.

.

.

.
- 16.

### **3.3.2 Mutual Fund**

It is a professionally managed form of collective investments that pools money from investors and invests it in stocks, bonds, short term money market instruments and / or other securities.


**Screen:**

MF Details: RM Managed											
Name	Folio ID	Links	CCY	Sttl CCY	Buy Price	Qty	Total Buy Cost	Current NAV	Market Value	Value Date	Quick Launch
<a href="#">DSP ML TIGER</a>	MF-12345		INR	INR	10.2000	31.0000	316.200	<a href="#">100.0000</a>	3,100.000	21/06/2012 18:13:48 PM	<a href="#">Subscribe/ Redeem/ STP/ CA</a>
<a href="#">Franklin Temp</a>	5456		USD	<a href="#">INR</a>	20.0000	100.0000	2,000.000	<a href="#">20.0000</a>	2,000.000	09/05/2012 00:00:00 AM	<a href="#">Subscribe/ Redeem/ STP/ CA</a>
<a href="#">Franklin Temp</a>	1452		USD	<a href="#">INR</a>	10.0278	126.0000	1,263.500	<a href="#">20.0000</a>	2,520.000	09/05/2012 00:00:00 AM	<a href="#">Subscribe/ Redeem/ STP/ CA</a>
<a href="#">HDFC Dividend scheme</a>	MF-12345		USD	<a href="#">INR</a>	6.0899	1,827.0577	11,126.570	<a href="#">1,147.0000</a>	2,095,635.158	23/12/2011 00:00:00 AM	<a href="#">Subscribe/ Redeem/ STP/ CA</a>
<a href="#">HDFC Dividend scheme</a>	1-6700		USD	<a href="#">INR</a>	1,147...	0.8718	1,000.000	<a href="#">1,147.0000</a>	1,000.001	23/12/2011 00:00:00 AM	<a href="#">Subscribe/ Redeem/ STP/ CA</a>
<a href="#">HDFC Top 500</a>	MF-12345		INR	INR	126.8899	926.0000	117,500.000	<a href="#">100.5000</a>	93,063.000	13/06/2012 18:05:33 PM	<a href="#">Subscribe/ Redeem/ STP/ CA</a>
Total (INR)							382,659...	<a href="#">1,222,427,410.476</a>			

Note: \*Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.7 MF: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'mutual-fund' and portfolio are displayed. Each security name in the tab is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyper link to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only
Folio ID	This field displays the Folio ID.	Display Only
CCY	This field displays the security currency.	Display only
Sttl CCY	This field displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument.  If the instrument currency and settlement currency are different the system displays the settlement currency with hyperlink. When the user clicks on this hyperlink, the system displays the pop-up showing corresponding settlement currency details.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Buy Price	<p>The buy price is determined at by using the weighted average cost methodology for each folio number. Please note, that the weighted average cost methodology is pertinent only for the remaining purchase transactions in the portfolio, subsequent to application of the first-in, first-out (FIFO) rule for all the sale transactions in the particular folio number of the portfolio.</p> <p>The average cost requires you to determine the average cost per unit – total amount invested divided by the total number of units held.</p> <p>A FIFO rule is an accounting methodology wherein if you hold a security of the same class which has been acquired on different dates, the security acquired at the earlier time is deemed to be disposed off first.</p> <p>For further details on weighted average and FIFO computation please refer to the table on 'Equity'.</p> <p> Cash corporate actions (dividend payout) will not be considered while computing buy price.</p> <p>Similar to the stock dividend in case of equity, dividend reinvest option in case of mutual funds is deemed to have been acquired on the record date and at nil price</p>	Display only
Qty	<p>The units will be calculated after the application of the FIFO accounting rule for each folio number.</p> <p>In addition to the units purchased, additional units received due to stock corporate actions will also be considered while determining the units.</p> <p>The orders entered for subscription/redemption of securities through the FCPB Order Management System and which are in open status will not be considered while determining the quantity.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Total Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity (mentioned above).	Display only
Current NAV	<p>The Net asset value, or NAV, is the current market value of a fund's holdings. The NAV is calculated based on the total value of the fund divided by the number of shares currently issued or outstanding. The market price for the funds will be received as online update from external data vendors.</p> <p>In a scenario where NAV is not received/ updated in the system at end of day then system will consider the previous day or previous received NAV for valuation and analysis.</p> <p>The Current NAV is hyperlinked, on click of which the system directs the user to Portfolio Alerts screen to set up the alerts as per requirement.</p> <p>The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation.</p>	Display only
Market Value	Market value is the product of the NAV and quantity.	Display only
Value Date	<p>Displays the date on which the NAV was received for determining the market value.</p> <p>The system also displays the time at which the last NAV was received for determining the market value.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Quick Launch	<p>This field displays the links to Subscribe/Redeem/STP. The links are available for all the securities in this tab. The field also displays an additional link 'CA' for including corporate action related data</p> <p>On selection of any of the above links, the system directs the user to the corresponding screens with pre-filled information of the selected security.</p> <p>The screens associated to these links have been explained in depth in the section on Transaction Management.</p> <p>On clicking the Buy/Sell hyperlink, the user navigates to the Order management or Transaction management screen. This depends on the way portfolio type maintenance has been set up.</p>	<p>The action buttons will be disabled for a Customer viewing the securities held in a RM Managed portfolio</p>

## **Mutual Fund Corporate Action**

### **User Access Level:**

**CUST:** A CUST can add/modify the details of Corporate Actions announced by the companies/institution only in Self managed portfolio.

### **Screen:**

**Figure 3.8: MF Corporate Action**

### **Screen Navigation:**

After you login as an CUST user, select Portfolio Maintenance → Mutual Fund and then click on the CA hyperlink.

The fields in the Mutual Fund Corporate action screen are similar to the Equity Corporate Action screen.

Additional fields in MF Corporate Action have been inscribed as below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
Dividend Percentage	Enables the user to enter the Dividend percentage per unit if the selected CA type is Dividend Payout.	Y
Ratio	Enables the user to enter the appropriate Corporate Action ratio for the corresponding instrument This field is enabled only for Dividend Reinvest and Bonus CA types.	Y
New Units Issued	Enables the user to enter the appropriate no. of new units issued. This field is enabled only for Dividend Reinvest and Bonus CA types.	Y
Amount	Enables the user to enter the dividend amount per unit if the selected CA type is Dividend Reinvest.	Y

### 3.3.3 **Bond**

A bond is a debt security in which the authorized issuer owes the holders a debt and is obliged to repay the principal and interest (coupon). Though the bonds cannot be transacted (purchased or sold) directly through the System, the system computes the accrued interest for the bonds (details of which are explained in the section on Transaction Management).



**Screen:**



Bond Details: RM Managed																
Name	CCY	Sttl CCY	Nominal Amount	Cap Factor%	Buy Price	Buy Yield	Units	Total Buy Cost	Coupon Rate	Maturity Date	Market Yield	Market Price	Accrued Interest	Market Value	Value Date	Quick Launch
<a href="#">Bonds20_1</a>	INR	INR	51,000,000	90	4,5177	0	1,0...	4,608,000	0.000		NA	<a href="#">244.4444</a>	0.000	0.000	13/04/2012 12:21:40 PM	<a href="#">Buy / Sell / CA</a>
Total (INR)								4,608,000						0.000		

Note: \* Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.9: Bond: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'Bonds' and portfolio are displayed. Each security in the tab is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyper link to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only
CCY	This field displays the security currency.	Display only
Sttl CCY	This field displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument.  If the instrument currency and settlement currency are different the system displays the settlement currency with hyperlink. When the user clicks on this hyperlink, the system displays the pop-up showing corresponding settlement currency details.	Display only
Buy Price	Buy price is the purchase price per unit of the bond purchased.	Display only
Units	The total balance units as of the current business day are displayed here. The balance units are derived by netting the purchase and sale transactions.	Display only
Total Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity (mentioned above).	Display only

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Mandatory</b>
Coupon Rate	The coupon rate of the bonds is displayed in this field. Coupon is the interest rate that the issuer pays to the bond holders. The coupon rates are maintained by the administrator in the Bond Master Table. For the variable coupon bonds, the prevalent rate for the current coupon period is displayed.	
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the bond. The Maturity date is the date on which the issuer repays the principal amount.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market Price	<p>This field displays the current prevailing price of the bond. To recap, FCPB supports the holdings of both traded and non traded bonds.</p> <p>The traded bonds will receive the current market price as a data feed from external data vendors.</p> <p> FCPB assumes that the prices quoted for the bonds in all the markets are clean price. Clean price is the basic price of the security and excludes accrued interest.</p> <p>For the non traded bonds the user can manually update the price of the bond by utilizing the 'Modify' hyperlink provided in this tab. The most recent manually updated price will be considered for the purpose of valuation/Analysis/Simulation. Please note, that the 'Modify' hyperlink will be enabled only for the non-traded bonds.</p> <p> In the absence of the user providing any information on the market price, the system will consider the acquisition price as the market price.</p> <p>The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation.</p> <p>The Todays Unit Price is hyperlinked, on click of which the system directs the user to Portfolio Alerts screen to set up the alerts as per requirement.</p>	Display only
Accrued Interest	<p>This field displays the accrued interest for the bond. Accrued interest is the interest that has accumulated since the principal investment or since the previous interest payment if there already exists one.</p>	Display only
Market value	<p>Market value is the product of the current unit price and quantity.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Value Date	<p>Displays the date on which the current unit price was received or manually updated for determining the market value.</p> <p>The system also displays the time at which the last unit price was received for determining the market value.</p>	Display only
Quick Launch	<p>This field displays the links as M/CA/S to modify, capture Corporate Action and Sell the securities. The links are available for all the securities in this tab.</p> <p>As mentioned earlier, the Modify link will be enabled only for the non traded bonds and facilitates the user to update the prevailing market price of the bond.</p> <p>To recap, the hyperlink for updating the Corporate Action related data is available for RM Managed portfolios. Once the user updates the holdings for a bond in FCPB, system initiates the computation of the accrued interest for the current interest payment period. At the end of the interest period, the system automatically credits the accrued interest as realized interest. All the earlier realized interest, prior to the entry of the bond's holdings in the system, needs to be captured by the user through the Corporate Action screen.</p> <p>Through the link for sell the user can initiate multiple transactions for the particular security to the extent of its holdings.</p> <p>On selection of any of the above links, system takes you to the corresponding screens with pre-filled information of the selected security.</p> <p>On clicking the Buy/Sell hyperlink, the user navigates to the Order management or Transaction management screen. This depends on the way portfolio type maintenance has been set up.</p>	The action buttons will be disabled for a Customer viewing the securities held in a RM Managed portfolio.

### **Bond Corporate Action**

#### **User Access Level:**

**CUST:** The CUST can add/modify the details of Corporate Actions announced by the companies/institution for Self managed portfolio.

### **Screen:**

**Figure 3.10: Bond Corporate Action**

### **Screen Navigation:**

After you login as an CUST user, select Portfolio Maintenance → Bond and then click on the CA hyperlink.

The fields in the Bond Corporate action screen are similar to the Equity Corporate Action screen.

Additional fields in Bond corporate Action have been inscribed as below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
Holding Face Amount (M)	Displays the Current Nominal Amount value	Y
Security Account	Displays the sub portfolio id as the Security Account no.	Y

### **3.3.4 Insurance**

Insurance is defined as the equitable transfer of the risk of a loss from one entity to another in exchange for a premium. The company that sells the insurance is called the insurer.

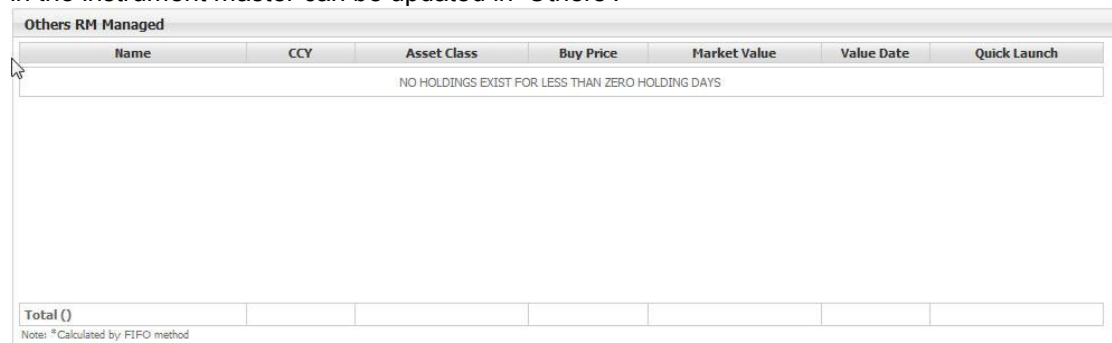
### **Screen:**



Field	Description	Mandatory
Fund Value	Displays the Fund Value for the selected ULIPs (Unit Linked Insurance Plan).	Display only
Surrender Value	This is the cash value due to the policy holder if he terminates his/her policy on the given date. The surrender value would be considered as market price for the purpose of valuation/Analysis/Simulation. Only financial type of policies has Surrender Value.	Display only
Value Date	Displays the valuation date of the surrender value.  The system also displays the valuation time of the surrender value.	Display only
Quick Launch	The column displays a hyperlink called – Details. On clicking this hyperlink the user gets to see the funds actually held by the customer for the specific ULIP and further clicking on the fund name, the user gets to see the actual sub holdings of that fund.	

### 3.3.5 Others

The holdings in the securities which cannot be classified into any of the instrument types defined in the instrument master can be updated in 'Others'.



Others RM Managed						
Name	CCY	Asset Class	Buy Price	Market Value	Value Date	Quick Launch
NO HOLDINGS EXIST FOR LESS THAN ZERO HOLDING DAYS						
Total ()						
Notes: *Calculated by FIFO method						

**Figure 3.12: Others: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'Others' and portfolio are displayed. Each security in the tab has a hyper link. Click on the hyper link to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only
CCY	This field displays the security currency.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset Class	<p>We have seen the classification of securities into the various instrument types. Now let us proceed to comprehend the classification of the securities into a range of asset classes. The different asset classes to be used by the bank can be identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.</p> <p>Currently the following asset classes are defined in FCPB; namely equity, debt, art, real estate, gems, metals, cash, commodities and insurance. All the securities which cannot be categorized into any of the above defined asset classes can be classified into the category 'others'. It is interesting to note that though the mutual funds, Portfolio Management Schemes and structured products are itself classified into the asset category others, the assets class of the underlying securities are considered for the purpose of portfolio analysis and simulation.</p> <p>This table displays all the securities categorized under the instrument type others and asset class real estate, art, gems, metals and others.</p>	Display only
Buy Price	<p>Buy price is the purchase price of the security. The system defaults the units of the securities in the instrument type 'others' to 1. The system does not currently support for capturing the additional purchase data. Hence any such additional purchase transactions need to be captured as separate security-holding or first time purchase.</p> <p>Thus the concept of weighted average price and FIFO are not applicable.</p>	Display only
Market Value	<p>Market value is the current price of the security. The latest market price updated by the user is displayed here.</p>	Display only
Value Date	<p>Displays the valuation date of the market value.</p> <p>The system also displays the valuation time of the market value.</p>	Display only



Field	Description	Mandatory
Quick Launch	<p>This field displays the links to Modify/Sell securities. The links are available for all the securities in the instrument type 'others' in this tab.</p> <p>The screen Modify enables the user to update the market price of the security. The latest market price provided by the user will be utilized for the purpose of valuation. In the absence of the user providing any information on the market price, the system will consider the acquisition price as the market price.</p> <p>The field also displays a link 'Sell' for capturing all the sell transactions of the securities.</p> <p>On selection of any of the above links, the system takes the user to the corresponding screens with pre-filled information of the selected security.</p>	The action buttons will be disabled for a Customer viewing the securities held in a RM Managed portfolio

### 3.3.6 Structured Product

Structured Products are synthetic investments specially created to meet specific needs that cannot be met from the standardized financial instruments available in the markets. A structured product is generally a pre-packaged investment strategy which is based on derivatives but which features protection of principal if held to maturity.

**Screen:**

Structured Products: RM Managed												
Name	CCY	Sttl CCY	Nominal Amount	Buy Price	Qty	Total Buy Cost	Market Price	Accrued Interest	Market Value	Commitment Amount	Value Date	Quick Launch
<a href="#">HDFC Structured Product</a>	INR	INR	300,011,100	10.0033	30,001.1...	30,011.101	<a href="#">0.0000</a>	0.000	30,001.100	N/A	01/02/2007 00:00:00 AM	<a href="#">Buy CA</a>
Total (INR)						30,011.100			<a href="#">30,001.100</a>			

Note: \* Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.13: Structured Products: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'Structured Product' and portfolio are displayed. Each security in the tab is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyper link to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only
CCY (Currency)	This field displays the security currency.	Display only
Sttl CCY	This field displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument.  If the instrument currency and settlement currency are different the system displays the settlement currency with hyperlink. When the user clicks on this hyperlink, the system displays the pop-up showing corresponding settlement currency details.	Display only
Nominal Amount	The stated value of an issued security that remains fixed.	Display only
Buy Price	Buy price is the purchase price of the security.	Display only
Qty	The total balance units as of the current business day are displayed here. The balance units are derived by netting the purchase and sale transactions.	Display only
Total Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity (mentioned above).	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market Price	<p>The market price for securities will be received as online update from external data vendors.</p> <p>In the absence of reception of market price on a business day, the system will consider the preceding received price for the function of valuation and analysis.</p> <p>The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation.</p> <p>The Market Price is hyperlinked, on click of which the system directs the user to Portfolio Alerts screen to set up the alerts as per requirement.</p>	Display only
Accrued Interest	It displays the accrued interest for the instrument	Display only
Market Value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.	Display only
Commitment Amount	Commitment Amount field is applicable for Structured Products which are of Payment Type 'Installment Based' and it indicates the Commitment Amount that the investor has committed towards the fund	Display only
Value Date	Displays the valuation date of the market value.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Quick Launch	<p>This field displays the links to Buy, Sell, and CA. The links are available for all One-Time Structured Products and also for Installment-Based Structured Products which are of On-Call Drawdown Type.</p> <p>On selection of any of the above links, system takes you to the corresponding screens with pre-filled information of the selected security.</p> <p>The action buttons will not be available for an instrument for which Order was placed with Schedule-Based Drawdown.</p> <p>On clicking the Buy/Sell hyperlink, the user navigates to the Order management or Transaction management screen. This depends on the way portfolio type maintenance has been set up.</p>	

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the portfolio preferred currency.

## **SP Corporate Action**

### **User Access Level:**

**CUST:** The CUST can add/modify the details of Corporate Actions announced by the companies/institution in Self managed portfolio.

## Screen:

**Figure 3.14: Structured Products Corporate Action**

## Screen Navigation:

After you login as an CUST user, select Portfolio Maintenance → Structured Products and then click on the CA hyperlink.

The fields in the Structured Product corporate action screen are similar to the Equity Corporate Action screen.

Additional fields in Structured Product corporate action have been inscribed as below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
Dividend/Coupon Percentage	Enables the user to enter the Dividend percentage per unit if the selected CA type is Dividend.	Y

### 3.3.7 Commodities

Commodities have evolved as an asset class with the development of commodity futures indexes and, more recently, the introduction of investment vehicles that track commodity indexes. Almost all commodity speculators trade on margin which results in substantial risk to the invested principal.

## Screen:

Commodity: RM Managed

Name	CCY	Sttl CCY	Units	Qty	Buy Price*	Total Buy Cost	Market Price	Market Value	Value Date	Quick Launch
<a href="#">COMM1</a>	INR	INR	Kgs	100.0000	150.0000	15,000.000	<a href="#">150.0000</a>	15,000.000	21/05/2012 11:18:58 AM	<a href="#">Buy/ Sell</a>
<a href="#">COMM2</a>	INR	INR	Litres	200.0000	10.0000	2,000.000	<a href="#">20.0000</a>	4,000.000	13/04/2012 12:23:07 PM	<a href="#">Buy/ Sell</a>
Total (INR)						17,000.000		<a href="#">19,000.000</a>		

Notes: \*Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.15: Commodity: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'Commodities' of the chosen portfolio are displayed. Each security is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyper link to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only
(CCY) Currency	This field displays the security currency.	Display only
Sttl CCY	This field displays the settlement currency for the corresponding instrument.  If the instrument currency and settlement currency are different the system displays the settlement currency with hyperlink. When the user clicks on this hyperlink, the system displays the pop-up showing corresponding settlement currency details.	Display only
Units	The denotation of the quantity is indicated in this field.	Display only
Qty	The total balance units as of the current business day are displayed here. The balance units are derived by netting the purchase and sale transactions.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Buy Price*	<p>The buy price is determined at by using the average cost methodology. Please note, that the average cost methodology is pertinent only for the remaining purchase transactions in the portfolio, subsequent to application of the first-in, first-out (FIFO) rule for all the sale transactions in the portfolio.</p> <p>The average cost requires you to determine the average cost per security of a class – total amount invested divided by the total number of commodities held.</p> <p>A FIFO rule is an accounting methodology wherein if you hold a security of the same class which has been acquired on different dates, the security acquired at the earlier time is deemed to be disposed off first.</p>	Display only
Total Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity. .	Display only
Market Price	<p>The market price for securities will be received as online update from external data vendors.</p> <p>In the absence of reception of market price on a business day, the system will consider the preceding received price for the function of valuation and analysis.</p> <p>The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation.</p> <p>The Market Price is hyperlinked, on click of which the system directs the user to Portfolio Alerts screen to set up the alerts as per requirement.</p>	Display only
Market Value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.	Display only
Value Date	<p>Displays the valuation date of the market value.</p> <p>The system also displays the valuation time of the market value.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Quick Launch	<p>This field displays the links to Sell/Buy. The links are available for all the securities in this tab.</p> <p>On selection of any of the above links, escorts you to the corresponding screens with pre-filled information of the selected security.</p> <p>The screens associated to these links have been explained in depth in the section on Transaction Management.</p> <p>The action buttons will be disabled for a Customer viewing the securities held in a RM Managed Portfolio.</p> <p>On clicking the Buy/Sell hyperlink, the user navigates to the Order management or Transaction management screen. This depends on the way portfolio type maintenance has been set up.</p>	

### 3.3.8 **PMS**

Portfolio Management Services (PMS) are similar to Mutual Funds and offer customized solutions to the high net worth investors and invests on their behalf in both the equity and debt markets. There are mainly two kinds of portfolio management services, namely Discretionary Portfolio Management and Non-discretionary Portfolio Management. Discretionary Portfolio Management is where the fund manager has the liberty to invest the funds at his discretion without consulting the client. The fund manager independently manages the funds of each client subject to the overall mandate as given by the client and can be compared with a mutual fund scheme, while in the case of a non-discretionary fund management service, all investment decisions are carried out after consultation with the client.

Most of the PMS investments are for long term, generally over 1 year and are focused towards equities. As each of the PMS investments are specifically designed and customized to cater to each customer depending on his/her needs, the constituents of the PMS investment vary from customer to customer.



**Screen:**

PMS: RM Managed						
Instrument Name	CCY	Account Number	Total Buy Cost	Market Value	Value Date	View
<a href="#">HSBC-PMS</a>	SGD	1043	5,000.00	5,000.00	19/12/2008 00:00:00 AM	<a href="#">Details / CA</a>
Total (SGD)			5,000.00	5,000.00		

**Figure 3.16: PMS: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'Portfolio Management Scheme' of the chosen portfolio are displayed. Each security is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyperlink to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only
CCY	This field displays the security currency.	Display only
Account number	This is a unique customer account number	Display only
Investment amount	This field indicates the total amount invested by the customer in the particular scheme. This amount will be received as a feed from external source. System will not roll up the transaction to compute the holding details in PMS, all the information regarding buy cost, market value and transaction details will come as a feed from external source	Display only
Market Value	Market value indicates the value of the scheme as of the given valuation date and will be received as a feed from external source..	Display only
Value Date	Indicates the latest date of reception of the market price feed. The system also displays the time at which last market value was received.	Display only

View	<p>This field displays the links to Details and CA. The links are available for all the securities in this tab.</p> <p>The link 'Details' enables the user to view the constituents of the scheme. The screen shot of this screen and its fields have been elucidated below.</p> <p>The link 'CA' directs the user to Corporate Action screen to set the details for CA.</p> <p>The action buttons will be disabled for a Customer viewing the securities held in a RM Managed Portfolio</p>	
------	--	--

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the portfolio preferred currency.

On clicking the link 'Details' will result in the opening of a pop-up window displaying the constituents of the scheme.

#### Screen:

Instrument Name	Instrument Type	Currency	Qty	Buy Price	Total Buy Cost	Market Price	Market Value	Unrealized Gain/Loss	Value Date
Reliance	Equity	INR	1000	1625	1625000	2489	2489000	864000	20/01/2008
TISCO	Equity	INR	1500	525	787500	680	1020000	232500	20/01/2008
SBI	Equity	INR	500	1985	992500	2285	1142500	150000	20/01/2008
HDFC Bank	Equity	INR	450	950	427500	1492	671400	243900	20/01/2008
Reliance Growth Fund	MF	INR	5000	225	1125000	302	1510000	385000	20/01/2008
Total									

**Figure 3.17: Scheme Details Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Name	All the names of the constituents of the scheme are displayed in this field. These constituents will be received as an external data feed.	Display only
Currency	This field displays the constituent's currency.	Display only
Quantity	Along with the constituents, the external data feed is also assumed to constitute the magnitude of investment in each constituent. It is also assumed, that this holding information received from time to time as data from external data feed will also constitute the units received as corporate action.	Display only

Buy Cost	This field indicates the total amount invested by the customer in each constituent.	Display only
Market Value	Market value indicates the value of the constituent as of the given valuation date. Please note, that the updating of the market price of all the constituents falling under the category of equity, mutual funds and traded bonds will be similar to the other direct holdings of the customer in these instruments.	Display only
Value Date	Indicates the latest date of reception of the market price feed.	Display only

As explained earlier, on clicking on any of the securities in this tab, displays the entire transaction details of the security in a pop up screen. This option is however unavailable for the accounts held under the instrument type 'CASA' and 'TD'.

### 3.3.9 **Generic Instrument**

The Others instrument type has few drawbacks and it does not support Partial Sale of units. It is only used for non-unitized instruments that are bought and sold in amounts rather than units, e.g. PMS, Art /collectibles, Property etc, To overcome this problem, the new instrument type called 'Generic' is introduced. These instruments are unitized (i.e. which are traded in the market at a per-unit price) and are not of type direct equity, mutual funds, Insurance, structured product & Alternatives, bond, commodity.

Name	CCY	STD CCY	Buy Price	Qty	Total Buy Cost	Market Price	Market Value	Value Date	Action
								AM	
Total (SGD)					65.09		65.09		

**Figure 3.18: Generic Instrument: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Name of the Generic Instrument is displayed with a hyperlink, When the hyperlink is clicked, a pop-up window appears showing transaction history.	Display only
Instrument Currency	Displays the currency in which transaction took place	Display only
Settlement Currency	Displays the currency in which transaction settlement took place	Display Only

Buy Price	Displays weighted averaged buy price	Display only
Qty	Displays the quantity of transaction	Display only
Total Buy Cost	Displays the total buy cost obtained by multiplying Buy Price with Qty	Display only
Market Price	Displays the last updated market price of the underlying security	Display only
Market Value	Market value indicates the value of the constituent as of the given valuation date. It is calculated as Market Price * Qty	Display only
Value Date	Indicates the latest date and time of reception of the market price feed.	Display only
Action	This field displays the links to Sell/Buy.	Display only

### 3.3.10 Corpus

Corpus refers to quantum of money brought in or taken out from the Portfolio by the client in the form of cash. The investments are made by the client by utilizing the money already available in the portfolio and all the transactions are made through the discretionary portfolios.

Corpus Details: Discretionary						
Name	DP ID	CCY	Stk CCY	Total Buy Cost	Market Value	Value Date
<a href="#">Corpus-INR</a>	10057	INR	INR	80,416.67	80,416.67	31/12/2008 13:34:42 PM
<b>Total (INR)</b>				<b>80,416.67</b>	<b>80,416.67</b>	

Note: \*Buy price is calculated based on FIFO method

**Figure 3.19: Corpus: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	All the securities in the chosen instrument type 'Corpus' and portfolio are displayed. Each security name in the tab is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyper link to view all the transaction executed in the security.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
DP ID	This field displays the DP - ID.	Display Only
CCY	This field displays the security currency.	Display only
Sttl CCY	Displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument	
Total Buy Cost	Displays the total buy cost of the corresponding instrument	Display only
Market Value	Displays the market value of the corresponding instrument	
Value Date	Indicates the latest date and time of reception of the market price feed.	Display only

### 3.3.11 **CASA**

Suggests current and savings account. The bank has the option to include the accounts held within the bank in this instrument type as part of their portfolio holding. The administrator can opt for this option of inclusion through the Banking Product Master table.

The customer can add all his retail accounts, including the ones held outside the bank through the 'Network' screen. Note that the Network screen can be accessed through Customer login by

clicking on the  button in the 'Network' tab on the Customer Dashboard.

This screen will be editable only for a customer login and hence the provision of adding accounts has been provided only to the customer. On adding an account, the corresponding data will be displayed along with the other holdings in the portfolio under Portfolio 'Investments' in the network screen. This constituent conveys the total value of the holdings held by the customer across his/her portfolios. The accounts under 'CASA' type of instrument will be included in the portfolio type 'RM Managed' for accounts received from Core Banking. Accounts added by customer from other Banks apart from the Home-Bank, will be added under 'Heldaway' portfolio type. Cash balances will be updated as a end of day process or as and when updated feed is received from the core banking system.

## Screen:

Accounts: Heldaway						
Account Type	A/c No	CCY	Available Balance	Hold Amount	Total Balance	As on Date
SavingAcct-EUR	500012	EUR	0.000	0.000	0.000	09/04/2013 00:00:00 AM
Total (INR)			0.000	0.000	0.000	

Notes: \*Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.20: CASA Balances Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Account type	The category of account viz., savings or current, will be displayed in this field.	Display only
Account Number	As the name suggests this field displays the account number. Please note that each account will be represented separately in this tab.	Display only
CCY	This field displays the currency of the account.	Display only
Available Balance	The current balance of the CASA account will be displayed in this field. This balance amount is the Market Value which includes Accrued Interest also.	Display only
Hold Amount	Hold Amount on the CASA account as provided by the Banking System	Display only
Total Balance	Sum of Available Balance and Hold Amount.	Display only
As on Date	Indicates the latest date of reception of the account balance.	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the portfolio preferred currency (computed as explained in the earlier section).

## Time Deposits (TD):

Time deposits (TD) are deposits that are with the bank for a fixed period and earn a rate of interest during the tenure of investment. Standalone TD's are classified as debt and the interest computation is like any other debt instrument such as bonds, debentures etc.

In FCPB, Time deposit will be mapped to instrument type 'Time Deposit'. For each currency there will be only one instrument maintained in the Instrument Master Mst\_Instrument, with any suitable identifiable name like 'TD in HKD' or 'Time Deposit in USD' etc. The FCPB system also supports the user to place the orders for Dual Currency deposits. A Dual Currency deposit (DCD) is a Structured product which combines a term deposit with a currency option to provide a higher yield than that is available for a standard deposit. 'TD' Instrument can also be Call Deposits and these would have the 'Callable' flag set to 'Y' in the Admin->Product Master screen. Such 'Call Deposit' type of 'TD' Instruments can be given any suitable name like 'Call Deposit in HKD', 'Call Deposit in USD' etc.

Once the TD transactions are uploaded from the core banking system, the same will reflect in the Portfolio Maintenance screen under the Time Deposit instrument type classification. Once the user clicks on further drill down of the TD instrument type, details of each TD should be displayed in a view table. Details such as TD number, Inception date, Maturity date and interest rate, compounding frequency, principal value, interest accrued and paid, Last interest paid date will be shown. Interest accruals will be calculated in FCPBS on a daily basis. However, the actual interest paid to the customer will be a data field received from the core banking system, which will be stored in the Interest/Dividend field. Interest paid on any partial & premature withdrawal will also be received as a data field from the core banking system. Accrued interest will also be received from the Core Banking System.

The TD transactions will be uploaded as a batch considering previous day transactions.

#### Screen:

Account Type	Account/ TD No.	CCY	Booking Date	Tenor	Principal	Maturity Date	Interest Rate	Accrued Interest	Interest Paid	As on Date	Quick Launch
TD-INR	TD-INR01042013	INR	01/04/2013	67 Day(s)	12,000.000	07/06/2013	10.000	0.000	0.000	01/04/2013	
Total (INR)					12,000.000			0.000	0.000		

Note: \*Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.21: TD Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Account Type	Displays the name of the Time Deposit instrument. If the TD is of type Dual Currency, the instrument name is concatenated with the text 'DCD'.	Y
Account /TD No.	As the name suggests this field displays the Term Deposit account number. Please note that each TD will be represented separately in this tab.	Display only
CCY	This field displays the currency of the deposit.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Booking Date	The creation date of the deposit is displayed in this field.	Display only
Tenor	The tenor of the deposit, denoted in days is represented in this field.	Display only
Principal	The original amount invested in the deposit is displayed in this field.	Display only
Maturity Date	The maturity date indicating when the customer will get his principal back is displayed in this field.	Display only
Interest Rate	The effective rate received on the invested amount is displayed here.	Display only
Accrued Interest	This field indicates the interest, till date, that has been earned but not received by the customer.	Display only
Interest Paid	The interest that has been paid by the bank or received by the customer, till date, is displayed in this field.	Display only
As on Date	Indicates the latest date of reception of the account balance.	Display only
Quick Launch	This field displays the CA link. The links are available for all the securities in this tab. The link 'CA' directs the user to Corporate Action screen to post the interest payment transactions.	Hyperlink

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the portfolio preferred currency.

#### DCD Maturity Screen

#### Navigation

RM Login -> Customer -> Portfolio Maintenance -> TD Instrument Type -> DCD Maturity Quick Launch

### 3.3.12 Futures

A future contract is an agreement between two parties to buy or sell an asset at a certain time in the future at a certain price. It is an agreement between the buyer and a seller for the purchase and sale of a particular asset at a specific future date. The price at which the asset would change hands in the future is agreed upon at the time of entering in to the contract. The actual purchase or sale of the underlying involving payment of cash and delivery of the instrument does not take place until the contracted date of delivery. A futures contract involves an obligation on both the parties to fulfill the terms of the contract.





## Screen:

Futures RM Managed										
Name	Exp Date	CCY	Account Number	Price Buy/(-Sell)	No. of open contracts Long/(-Short)	Amount	Market Price	Market Value	Value Date	Action
<a href="#">FUT001</a>	15/02/2020	INR	1055	60.0000	100.0000	2,000.000	50.0000	-8,000.000	02/05/2012 16:03:49 PM	
<a href="#">FUT003</a>	15/02/2020	INR	1055	100.0000	1.0000	20.000	2,000....	19,020.000	26/02/2013 12:02:30 PM	
Total (INR)						1,010.000		11,020.000		

Note: \*Calculated by FIFO method

**Figure 3.22: Futures: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	The field displays the Futures Instrument type	Display only
Exp Date	The field displays the Exp Date of the Futures contract	Display only
Instrument Currency	The field displays the instrument currency	Display only
Settlement Currency	The field displays the currency in which settlement took place.	Display only
Account Number	The field displays the Account Number for the future	Display only
Price Buy/(-Sell)	The field displays the price of the future	Display only
No. of open contracts Long/(-Short)	The field displays number of the open future contracts	Display only
Margin Amount	The field displays margin amount to be paid	Display only
Market Price	Market Price of future	Display only
Market Value	Market Value of future	Display only
Value Date	Indicates the latest date of reception of the market price feed	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Actions	This field displays the links to Sell/Buy. The links are available for all the securities in this tab.	Display only

### 3.3.13 Options

An Option is a contract which gives the right, but no obligation to buy or sell the asset at a stated date and at a stated price.

Options are of two types - Call and Put:

The 'Call' option type gives the buyer, the right to buy a given quantity of the underlying asset, at a given price on or before a given future date. On the other hand, 'Put' gives the buyer, the right to sell a given quantity of underlying asset at a given price on or before a given future date. There is no obligation for Call and Put options and are settled in cash.

**Screen:**

Options RM Managed												
Name	Exp Date	Opt Type	Stk Price	CCY	Account Number	Premium paid per unit. Paid/ (-Recd)	No. of open contracts Long/(-Short)	Buy cost premium /Net margin paid for options	Market Price	Market Value	Value Date	Action
<a href="#">OPT001</a>	31/12/2020	CALL	20.0000	INR	1055	120.0000	400.0000	240,000.000	100.0000	200,000...	02/05/2012 16:06:27 PM	<a href="#">Buy/ Sell</a>
<a href="#">OPT002</a>	31/12/2020	CALL	20.0000	INR	1055	10.0000	240.0000	12,000.000	45.0000	54,000.000	12/04/2012 17:00:30 PM	<a href="#">Buy/ Sell</a>
Total (INR)								252,000.000		254,000...		
Notes: * Calculated by FIFO method												

**Figure 3.23: Options: Valuation Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Name	The field displays the Futures Instrument type	Display only
Exp Date	The field displays the Exp Date of the Futures contract	Display only
Opt Type	The field displays the appropriate option type.	Display only
Stk Price(Strike Price)	The field displays the price defined at instrument creation level . This price is displayed in instrument currency.	Display only
Instrument Currency	The field displays the instrument currency	Display only

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Mandatory</b>
Settlement Currency	The field displays the currency in which settlement took place.	Display only
Account Number	The field displays the Account Number for the option	Display only
Premium/Unit Paid/Recd	The field displays the premium amount in multiples of tick size	Display only
No. of open contracts Long/(- Short)	The field displays number of the open future contracts	Display only
Buy Cost Premium/Net Margin Paid	The field displays the price of the option	Display only
Market Price	Market Price of the option	Display only
Margin Amount	The field displays margin amount to be paid	Display only
Market Value	Market Value of future	Display only
Value Date	Indicates the latest date of reception of the market price feed	Display only
Actions	This field displays the links to Buy/Sell/Exercise/Close. Exercise hyperlink is displayed when there is some holding in the portfolio; it is not displayed for zero holding. 'Close' hyperlink is enabled only on and after the maturity date. The links are available for all the securities in this tab. If the option type is 'European', the system displays the Exercise link on the contract expiry date. For American option type, the hyperlink is enabled all the time till the contract expiry date. Exercise hyperlink is enabled if the underlying security instrument type is 'Equity' or 'Bond'.	Display only

### **3.3.14 Forex**

FCPB provides the facility to input Forex deal details through the front end using the Forex Trxn Management screen or by upload through interface. Transaction Processing of a Forex deal is done similar to Futures instrument type processing, with a few specific changes done to accommodate the fact that unlike a Futures instrument, which has predefined and fixed maturity dates, standard contract amounts and is exchange traded, a Forex instrument is an OTC product (i.e. not exchange traded), and hence could have any currency pair, any amount and for any maturity date as required by the customer.

ForexRM2										
Instrument Name	FX Forward Date	Comm CCY	Terms CCY	FX Rate	Net Open Position Long/(- Short )	Amount	Market Price	Market Value	Value Date	Quick Launch
NO HOLDINGS EXIST FOR LESS THAN ZERO HOLDING DAYS										

**Figure 3.24: Forex: Valuation Screen**

### 3.3.15 Fee

The FCPB system calculates and stores the Periodic Fee based on the Client Segment, Portfolio Type and IAG combination. At a pre defined frequency; these fees are charged for each applicable customer portfolio either as Percentage, Flat, combination or Higher and displayed in Portfolio Maintenance screen.

In Portfolio Maintenance screen, Fee appears as an instrument with a hyperlink where the Buy Cost, Qty and Market value etc is displayed as zero. When the user clicks on the hyperlink, the Fee Transaction Details the pop-up is displayed showing the Fee history i.e. the various fees charged to the customer with the date of charge for that particular portfolio type.

Transaction Details :				
Currency	Date	Transaction Type	Transaction Narration / Desc	Amount
INR	18/03/2013	FEE	Custody Fee	9,889.241

**Figure 3.25: Fee: Transaction Details Pop up**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Currency	Displays the currency of the corresponding fee instrument.	
Date	Displays the date on which corresponding Fee was charged.	
Transaction Type	Displays the type of transaction i.e. Fee	
Transaction Narration/Desc	Displays the description for the corresponding transaction	
Amount	Displays the total fee amount charged for the corresponding transaction type	

## 3.4 **Portfolio Analysis**

### **Description:**

Portfolio analysis delivers insight into the factors that make the user portfolio move and illustrate how the investment decisions affect portfolio performance. FLEXCUBE Private Banking, provides expanded information about the user portfolio by

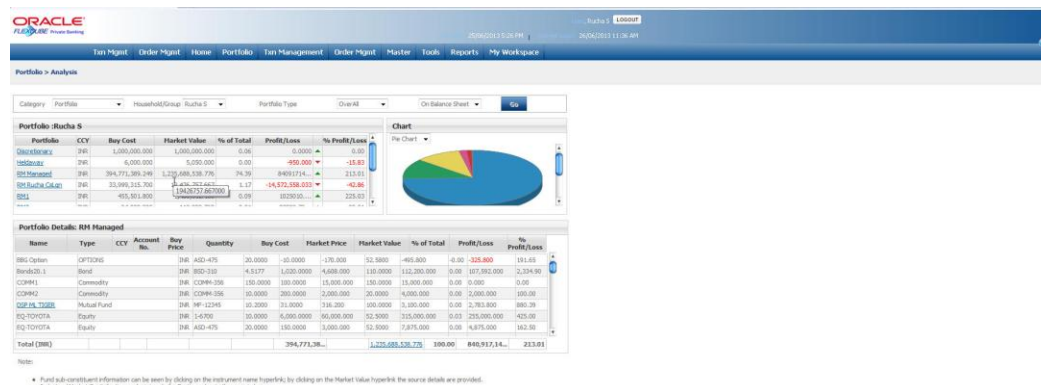
- Giving both graphical and holdings views of your portfolio
- Presenting the holdings across the different portfolios in different dimensions like asset class, industry, currency region, market capitalization and instrument type. These different dimensions in turn, can help the user to investigate the recent trading history of customer portfolio constituents.
- FCPB captures the detailed security level composition of Mutual funds, Portfolio Management Schemes and Structured products which is utilized in displaying the aforementioned views of the portfolio. This exhaustive classification allows for higher accuracy in aligning portfolios to pre-decided investment objectives of the customer.
- Shows household view of the portfolios
- Detailed Section of every item within each portfolio

### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** can view the holdings in different dimensions (portfolio, instrument group, asset class, industry, currency, region, market capitalization and instrument type). The customer can also view the analysis for the RM Managed and Held Away Portfolio.

### 3.4.1 View Portfolio Analysis – By Portfolio

Screen:



Figure

#### 3.26: Portfolio Analysis – By Portfolio Screen

Screen Navigation:

1. After you login, the portfolio analysis screen can be accessed through the Portfolio and Analysis sub menu.

How to Read the Screen:

1. The analysis screen displays four tabs when you arrive at the screen: Category, Household, Portfolio Type and On Balance Sheet/Contingent.
2. The first tab, on the top left corner of the screen is a drop-down list displaying the list of different types of views of the holdings available to you.

**STOP** Default value will be 'Portfolio'.

The second tab is a drop down list displaying the list of household members as well as self and also option to have various views at Household level. This field will be displayed for only those customers who have household attached to them.


**STOP** Default value will be Self or household head name

The third tab is a drop-down list which displays the list of portfolio types i.e Overall, Managed by RM & Managed by Client.

**STOP** Default value will be **overall**.


The final and fourth tab enables the user to view the On Balance Sheet details or Contingent details if applicable.




The user has an option of selecting various combinations and click on  button will display the information on the screen.

- The three dropdown could be used to select different combinations to extract the specific information. Examples are as follows
  - **Combination 1-** Portfolio, Self, Overall: this selection will display the information about all the portfolios of the selected customer, portfolio wise. The Table name displayed should be “Portfolio : customer name”
  - **Combination 2** – Asset class, household member, managed by client: this selection will display the information regarding the chosen household members client managed portfolio holdings, asset class wise. The Table name displayed should be “Asset Class : household member name”
  - **Combination 3** – Instrument type, Household, overall: This selection will display the information regarding the holdings of all the members in RM managed portfolios, instrument type wise. The Table name displayed should be “Instrument Type : customer name (Household)”
- The Columns displayed after selecting the category dropdown depends on the value of the parameter INSTRU\_DECOMP\_ASSET\_CLASS in REF\_BANK\_PARAMS:
  - If INSTRU\_DECOMP\_ASSET\_CLASS = N, then the columns shown for different category selection are as follows:
    - Portfolio, Instrument Type, Asset Class : Buy Cost, Market Value, Profit/Loss, %Profit/Loss, % of Total
    - Region, Currency, Industry, Market Capitalization : Market Value, % of Total
  - If INSTRU\_DECOMP\_ASSET\_CLASS = Y, then the columns shown for different category selection are as follows:
    - Portfolio: Currency, Buy Cost, Market Value, Profit/Loss, %Profit/Loss, % of Total
    - Instrument Type: Buy Cost, Market Value, Profit/Loss, %Profit/Loss, % of Total
    - Asset Class, Region, Currency, Industry, Market Capitalization : Market Value, % of Total
- 3. The user can view the details in the first table based on the selection. For example if customer has selected View by portfolio for self in overall portfolio, user will be able to view all the portfolios and their respective currency, buy cost, market value, % of total, profit/loss. Indicator, % profit/loss. This table will display the aggregated value at portfolio level
- 4. Adjacent to the first table is a tab displaying the graphical depiction of the type of view user have selected. The user has been provided with the flexibility to view the graph either as a pie chart or as a bar chart. This can be done by selecting the appropriate type of graph from the drop box provided in this tab.


In the bar chart, the y axis represents the % of total i.e % composition of a portfolio in comparison to the total composition of the customer's holdings across all his portfolios. This % is arrived at by calculating the portfolio values in the customer preferred currency. The x axis represents the names of the various portfolio held by the customer.

 Buy Price, QTY and Market Price columns remains blank for CASA and TD instrument types.

 Every access of the screen through the main menu will result in renewal of the analysis with the current market price of the securities.

**Understanding the screen:** The system facilitates to analyze the holdings across all the portfolios. Portfolios which currently do not have any holdings will not be displayed in the screen. If the customer does not have any holdings across any of the portfolios, then the system will display blank tabs. This system behaviour is applicable to all the screens under Portfolio submenu.

## PORTFOLIO

Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio	All the portfolios of the selected customer are displayed. Each of the portfolios is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyperlink to view a tab which displays the analysis of all the securities in the portfolio. The details of this tab have been detailed later in this section.	Display only
Currency	All the figures associated to the portfolio are displayed in the portfolio currency. For all the securities in the portfolio, the system converts and stores all the transaction amounts from the security currency to the portfolio currency.	Display only
Buy Cost	This is the sum of the buy costs of all the securities, across all the instrument types, in the portfolio, denominated in the portfolio currency.	Display only
Market value	<p>Similar to the buy cost, the market value at the portfolio level represent the sum of the market values for all the securities across all the instrument types in the portfolio, denominated in the portfolio currency. Market value at the security level is computed as a product of quantity and market price.</p> <p>The surrender value would be considered as market price for the securities under the instrument type insurance.</p> <p> In the absence of market price, for the securities requiring market price to be manually updated, the system considers the acquisition price as the market price.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
% of Total	<p>Percentage composition of the portfolio under consideration with respect to all the portfolios.</p> <p>This figure is computed as</p> <p>Market value of the portfolio under consideration (in customer preferred currency)/ total market value of all the portfolios (in customer preferred currency)</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the portfolios would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display only
Profit/Loss	<p>Profit /loss at the portfolio level, is again the sum of the profit /loss of all the securities across all instrument types in the portfolio, in the portfolio currency. The profit/loss at the security level is computed as the difference between the Market value and the buy cost (market value and buy cost are computed as explained above).</p> <p>Loss figures are displayed in RED color and are prefixed with a minus (-) sign.</p>	Display only
% Profit/Loss	<p>The % of the above computed profit/loss is displayed here. This is computed by dividing the profit/loss by the buy cost and then multiplying it by 100.</p> <p>Loss % is also displayed in RED color and are prefixed with a minus (-) sign.</p>	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency (computed as explained in the earlier section).

As explained earlier, on clicking the name of any of the portfolios of the customer, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected portfolio.

#### PORTFOLIO DETAILS

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities across all the instrument types in the portfolio.	Display only
Type	Displays the instrument type for each of the securities in the portfolio.	Display only
Currency	Security currency is displayed. Again, the currency displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table.	Display only.

Field	Description	Mandatory
Account No.	Displays the account no. of the customer for the respective securities.	Display only
Buy Price	<p>Buy price for the security is computed by using the weighted average price methodology.</p> <p>The weighted average price for a security is computed as <math>\sum Q_i \sum P_i / \sum Q_i</math>, where <math>Q_i</math> is the units bought in each transaction and <math>P_i</math> is the buy price of that transaction.</p> <p>Cash corporate actions for all the types of instrument will not be considered while computing buy price.</p>	Display only
	<p>The stock corporate actions for equity viz. bonus stock dividends are deemed to have been acquired on the record date and at a nil price. The treatment for shares acquired under a rights issue is the same as for a bonus issue except that an allowance has to be made for the amount paid to acquire the additional shares. In case of Mutual funds, the dividend reinvest option is deemed to have been acquired on the record date and at nil price.</p> <p>For securities under the instrument class insurance, the premiums paid are considered as acquisition price for the policy.</p>	
Quantity	<p>As mentioned earlier, the units considered for, are after the application of the FIFO accounting rule.</p> <p>In addition to the units purchased, additional units received due to stock corporate actions are also taken into consideration while determining the units.</p> <p>For the securities purchased under the instrument type insurance, PMS, SPL Product, CASA, TD and others, units are not displayed by the system.</p> <p>The orders entered for purchase /sale of securities through the System Order Management System and which are in open status for the instrument type equity and mutual funds will not be considered.</p>	Display only
Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity (mentioned above).	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market price	<p>The market price for securities defined under the instrument type equity, mutual fund, traded bonds, PMS, commodity, SPL Product, CASA, TD and structured product will come from external feed. For the securities under the instrument type insurance, others and non traded bonds the price is as per the last manual update.</p> <p>The surrender value would be considered as market price for the securities under the instrument type insurance.</p> <p>The system does the valuation of Proprietary Portfolios at different instrument prices maintain in the system. If the instrument price for proprietary portfolio valuation is not available (price is not available for any day) then system considers the price available for customer portfolio valuation and displays the same</p>	Display only
Market value	<p>Market value is the product of the market price and quantity. The system also provides the hyperlink to the Total Market Value on click of which it displays the pop up giving Unrealized Realized Gain/Loss summary in Portfolio and Client Currency against each instrument with break-up between Price and Currency impact. The system does not provide this price and currency impact break-up for amount based, FEE and Futures and Options instrument types.</p>	Display only
% of Total	<p>Is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in the portfolio as compared to total market value of the portfolio.</p>	Display only
Profit/Loss	<p>Is computed as the difference between the buy cost and market value.</p> <p>Loss figures are displayed in RED color and are prefixed with a minus (-) sign.</p>	Display only
% Profit Loss	<p>Is the percentage of the profit/loss computed above.</p>	Display only

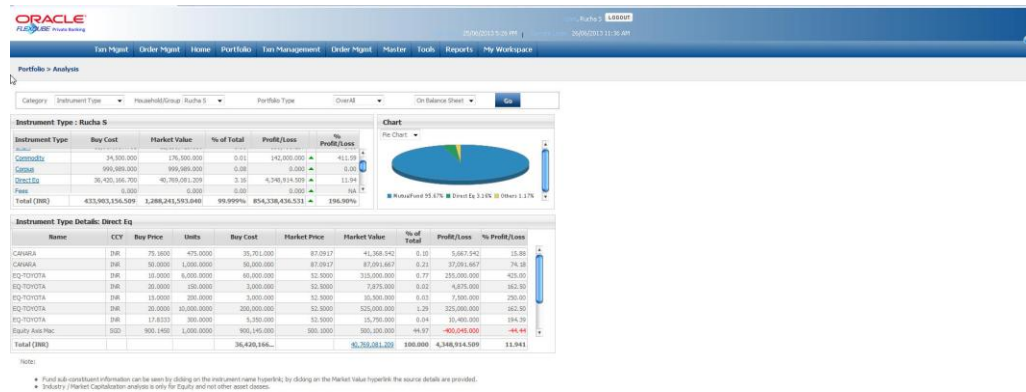
At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.



If the Category is selected as Portfolio then the system displays the details in the portfolio currency in the Gain Loss Summary pop up as explained in the Portfolio Maintenance section.

## 3.4.2 View Portfolio Analysis – By Instrument Type

Screen:



**Figure 3.27: Portfolio Analysis – By Instrument Type Screen**

**Screen Navigation:**

In Portfolio Analysis screen, select the Instrument Type option from the Category drop-down list.

**How to read the screen:**

1. The second table on the left side displays the analysis for the different instruments types, held by the customer you have selected, across all his portfolios.
2. The different instrument types to be used by the bank are identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.
3. Similarly every new security, in the FLEXCUBE Private Banking system needs to be added to the Instrument Master Table before it can be used in the portfolio records. The instrument master table contains the various related data for the security such as the instrument type, instrument group, currency, region, industry and asset class.
4. Now, when the user selects the option 'By instrument type' for analysis, all the holdings of the customer get organized in accordance to the different instrument types and are displayed in the customer preferred currency. This sorting of the holdings is done across all the portfolios of the customer.

For Example:

Suppose user have 2 portfolios, RM Managed and Self Managed and securities held under each portfolio are as given below:

**RM Managed**

Security	Instrument type	Units
IBM	Equity	200

HSBC Global Opportunity Fund	Mutual Fund	500
------------------------------	-------------	-----

#### Self Managed

Security	Instrument type	Units
Walmart	Equity	200
HSBC Global Opportunity Fund	Mutual Fund	500

When you select the option 'By Instrument type', the holdings data gets sorted and displayed as

Instrument Type	Units
Mutual Fund	1000
Equity	400

Currently the following instrument types are supported by the system

- Equity
  - Mutual Fund
  - Insurance
  - Commodities
  - Bonds
  - Generic
  - Portfolio Management Schemes
  - CASA
  - TD
  - Others
  - Structured Product
  - Specialized Product
  - Derivatives-Futures and Options
5. Adjacent to the first table is a tab displaying the graphical depiction of the type of view selected by the user. The user has been provided with the flexibility to view the graph either as a pie chart or as a bar chart. This can be done by selecting the appropriate type of graph from the drop-down list provided in this tab.

In the bar chart, the y axis represents the % of total i.e % composition of an instrument type in comparison to the total composition of the customer's holdings across all the types of instruments across all his portfolios. This % is arrived at by calculating all the associated amounts in the customer preferred currency. The x axis names the different instrument types held by the customer.

6. For further analysis of the holdings in each instrument type, you can click on the linked instrument name in the table. An additional table will appear below the first table, which will provide further information and analysis about the securities held in the selected type of instrument.

In the above example, on selecting the instrument type 'mutual fund' the holdings in the HSBC Global Opportunity Fund in both the portfolios will be collectively displayed as 1000 units.

### Understanding the Screen:

Both the screens on Analysis 'By Portfolio' and 'By Instrument Type' are similar and so are the fields in both the screens. As the screens differ only in some of the validations, please refer to the description in the section on 'By Portfolio' for the common features and computation methodology. The distinctive field features are indicated below

#### Instrument Type

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Type	All the types of instruments encompassing all his holdings across all the portfolios of the selected customer are displayed. Each type of instrument in the tab has a hyper link. Click on the hyper link to view a tab displaying additional analysis of all the securities in the portfolio. The details of this tab have been detailed in the next table.	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency (computed as explained in section 1.1.2).

As explained earlier, on clicking any of the instrument types, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected instrument.


#### Instrument Type Details

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities in the selected instrument type.	Display only
Currency	Security currency is displayed. The currency displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only.




Field	Description	Mandatory
Buy Price	<p>Buy price for the security is computed by using the weighted average price methodology.</p> <p>The weighted average price for a security is computed as <math>\sum Q_i \sum P_i / \sum Q_i</math>, where <math>Q_i</math> is the units bought in each transaction and <math>P_i</math> is the buy price of that transaction.</p> <p>For the securities under the instrument type CASA and TD the current balances in the accounts will be considered as their buy price</p> <p>For the holdings in the instrument type PMS &amp; SPL Product, the value captured in the field 'Total Investment' will be considered for the purpose of analysis.</p>	Display only
Units	<p>As mentioned earlier, the units considered for, are after the application of the FIFO accounting rule.</p> <p>In addition to the units purchased, additional units received due to stock corporate actions are also taken into consideration while determining the units.</p> <p>For the securities purchased under the instrument type insurance, PMS, SPL Product, CASA, TD, others, Futures, and Options, the units are not displayed by the system.</p>	Display only
Buy Cost	Buy Cost is the product of the buy price and quantity (mentioned above).	Display only
Market price	<p>The market price for securities defined under the instrument type equity, mutual fund, traded bonds, PMS, SPL Product and structured product will come as a feed from external source. For the securities under the instrument type insurance, others and non traded bonds the price is as per the last manual update.</p> <p>For the securities under the instrument type CASA and TD the current balances in the accounts will be considered as their market price.</p>	Display only

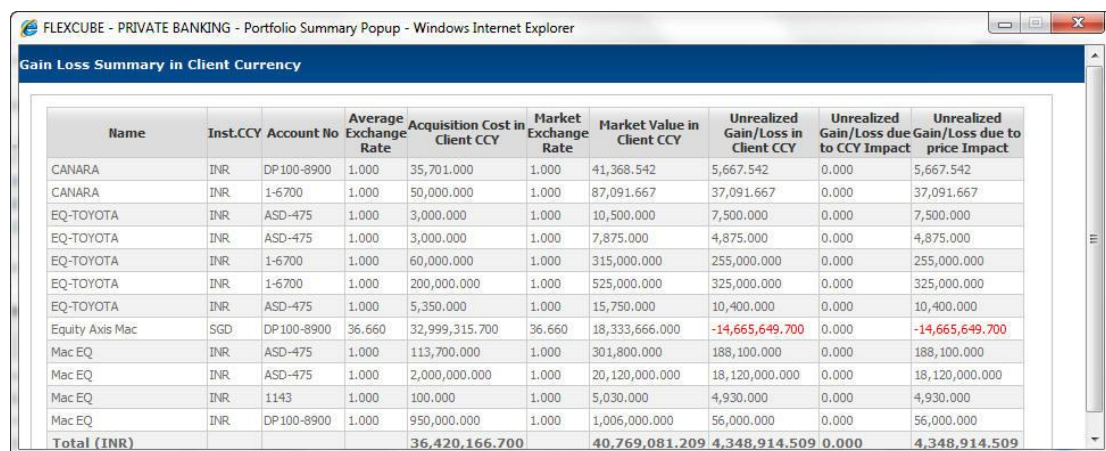
Field	Description	Mandatory
Market value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity. The system also provides the hyperlink to the Total Market Value giving the details of Unrealized Realized Gain/Loss summary in Portfolio and Client Currency against each instrument with break-up between Price and Currency impact.	Display only
% of Total	Is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in the instrument as compared to total market value of the instrument. Please note the values are computed in the customer preferred currency.	Display only
Profit/Loss	Is computed as the difference between the buy cost and market value.  Loss figures are displayed in RED color and are prefixed with a minus (-) sign.	Display only
% Profit Loss	Is the percentage of the profit/loss computed above.	Display only

 Buy Price, QTY and Market Price columns remains blank for CASA and TD instrument types.

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

 If the Category is selected as Instrument Type then the system displays the details in the customer preferred currency in the Gain Loss Summary pop up as shown below:

**Screen:**



Name	Inst.CCY	Account No	Average Exchange Rate	Acquisition Cost in Client CCY	Market Exchange Rate	Market Value in Client CCY	Unrealized Gain/Loss in Client CCY	Unrealized Gain/Loss due to CCY Impact	Unrealized Gain/Loss due to price Impact
CANARA	INR	DP100-8900	1.000	35,701.000	1.000	41,368.542	5,667.542	0.000	5,667.542
CANARA	INR	1-6700	1.000	50,000.000	1.000	87,091.667	37,091.667	0.000	37,091.667
EQ-TOYOTA	INR	ASD-475	1.000	3,000.000	1.000	10,500.000	7,500.000	0.000	7,500.000
EQ-TOYOTA	INR	ASD-475	1.000	3,000.000	1.000	7,875.000	4,875.000	0.000	4,875.000
EQ-TOYOTA	INR	1-6700	1.000	60,000.000	1.000	315,000.000	255,000.000	0.000	255,000.000
EQ-TOYOTA	INR	1-6700	1.000	200,000.000	1.000	525,000.000	325,000.000	0.000	325,000.000
EQ-TOYOTA	INR	ASD-475	1.000	5,350.000	1.000	15,750.000	10,400.000	0.000	10,400.000
Equity Axis Mac	SGD	DP100-8900	36.660	32,999,315.700	36.660	18,333,666.000	-14,665,649.700	0.000	-14,665,649.700
Mac EQ	INR	ASD-475	1.000	113,700.000	1.000	301,800.000	188,100.000	0.000	188,100.000
Mac EQ	INR	ASD-475	1.000	2,000,000.000	1.000	20,120,000.000	18,120,000.000	0.000	18,120,000.000
Mac EQ	INR	1143	1.000	100.000	1.000	5,030.000	4,930.000	0.000	4,930.000
Mac EQ	INR	DP100-8900	1.000	950,000.000	1.000	1,006,000.000	56,000.000	0.000	56,000.000
<b>Total (INR)</b>				<b>36,420,166.700</b>		<b>40,769,081.209</b>	<b>4,348,914.509</b>	<b>0.000</b>	<b>4,348,914.509</b>

**Figure 3.28 Gain Loss Summary in Client Currency**

**Sub Constituent View of Instrument Type: MF & SP**

If Instrument type - MF or Structured Product is selected then the sub constituent details of the scheme/instrument will be displayed as a pop up by clicking on that scheme/instrument name hyperlink. Should be available to both views – Individual as well as Household

**Screen:**

Instrument Source DetailsSP-SDR		
Instrument Name	Instrument Type	Composition %
Mac EQ	Direct Eq	80.00%
BBG Bond Test 1	Bonds	5.00%
Mac OTH	Others	15.00%

**Figure 3.29: Instrument Source Details Window**

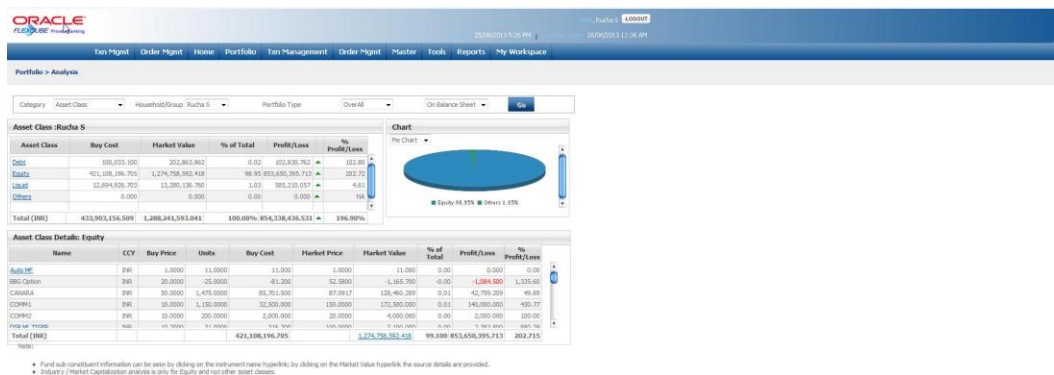
Attribute	Description
Header	Displays the Scheme/ Instrument name
Instrument Name	Displays the instrument name which are part of the sub constituents of the MF scheme or Structured Product.  Information regarding sub instrument name to be picked from INST_ASSET_ALLOC_PATTERN table
Instrument Type	Displays the instrument type.  Information to be picked from Mst_Instrument
Composition %	Displays the % allocation of the corresponding Instrument to the total holding.  Information to be picked from INST_ASSET_ALLOC_PATTERN table  Decimal % up to 2 decimal point

Total	Displays the total percentage allocation.  It should always add up to 100%
-------	--

**STOP** If Instrument Type MF is Fund of Fund then sub constituent of such scheme will again have exposure to another Fund and the decomposition view of the same will be available by clicking on that scheme name and the pop up page will refresh and will display sub constituent details of that scheme and so on.

### 3.4.3 View Portfolio Analysis – By Asset Class

Screen:



**Figure 3.30: Portfolio Analysis – By Asset Class Screen**

Screen Navigation:

To view the analysis for 'Asset Class' please ensure that the Asset Class option has been selected from the list of views.

1. The second tab on the left side displays the analysis for the different asset classes, spanning across the entire holdings of the customer selected, across all portfolios.

The different asset classes to be used by the bank are identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.


Now, when the user selects the option 'By asset class' for your analysis, all the holdings of the customer get organized in accordance to the different asset classes and are displayed in the customer preferred currency.

This sorting of the holdings is done across all the portfolios of the customer.

Currently the FCPB supports for following Asset classes

- equity
- debt

- art
- real estate
- gems
- metals
- cash
- commodities
- insurance
- All the securities which cannot be categorized into any of the above defined asset classes will be classified into the category 'others'.

The system also enables the user to analyze the multidimensional view for his/her assets by clicking on the  icon as explained in this section later.

7. The tab adjacent to the second tab displays the graphical depiction of the type of view you have selected. The user can view the graphs either as a pie chart or as a bar chart as explained earlier.
8. For further analysis of the holdings in each asset class, you can click on the hyper link under each asset class in the second tab. An additional tab will appear below the second tab, which will provide further information and analysis about the securities held in the selected asset class.

**Understanding the screen:** Irrespective of the type of login (customer or RM), the system facilitates to analyze the holdings across all the portfolios. An asset class which currently does not have any holdings will not be displayed in the screen. If the customer does not have any holdings across any of the asset class, then the system will display blank tabs.

The detailed descriptions of fields are given below:

#### Asset Class


Field	Description	Mandatory
-------	-------------	-----------


Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset class	<p>All the asset classes of all the holdings across all the portfolios of the selected customer are displayed. Each asset class in the tab has a hyper link. Click on the hyper link to view a tab displaying additional analysis of all the securities in the asset class. The details of this tab have been detailed in the next table.</p> <p>If the Asset Class Decomposition flag is set to Yes, then the system displays the Asset Class values after considering decomposed components.</p> <p>Further on click of any instrument hyperlink under 'Asset Class' tab, system displays the source for the decomposed values.</p> <p>If the flag is set as 'No' then system would not consider decomposed values.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market value	<p>Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.</p> <p>It is stated in the above section that the different asset classes to be used by the bank are identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table and that every new security added to the Instrument Master Table contains the various related data for the security such as the instrument type, currency, region, and industry and asset class. We also stated earlier that FCPB captures the detailed security level composition of Mutual funds, PMS and Structured products which are utilized in displaying the various views of the customer's holdings. The asset class analysis is one of these which utilizes the constituents of these instruments for displaying the holdings.</p> <p>The methodology of capturing this data and handling them for the securities under the instrument type Mutual Fund and Structured Products varies to some extent from that of the securities held under the instrument type PMS. While adding the securities under the instrument type Mutual Fund or Structured Products, the constituents under these instruments will be either received as external data feeds or can be manually put in by the administrator as distinctive securities in the Instrument Master Table. For the securities held under the instrument type PMS, the constituents of the scheme will be received as external data feed from the issuer of the PMS and will be specific to each customer account. However, depending on the instrument type of the constituents, they will be analyzed further for their sub-constituents. Consider the case where the customer has a holding in a PMS scheme for which the constituents are IBM, Microsoft and Franklin Templeton Mutual Fund. While analyzing the holdings of the PMS the system will consider IBM, Microsoft and the sub constituents of the Mutual Fund.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory									
	<p>Consequently, on selection of the asset class type of analysis, you are provided with the details of not only the direct investments but also the indirect investments in the different asset classes. The indirect investments are on account of the holdings in mutual funds, PMS and structured products types of instrument (constituents of mutual fund, PMS and structured product).</p> <p>This is explained with examples given below:</p> <p>1. AIM Japan Report has provided the following information on its constituents</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Asset Class</th><th>% Holding</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Tokyo Motor</td><td>Equity</td><td>69.81%</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cash</td><td>Cash</td><td>30.19%</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>And Kotak Gilt has declared 100% holding in Treasury Bill which is classified under the Asset class debt.</p> <p>Now if the customer you have selected holds both these instruments, then on opting for the asset class analysis, the user will be displayed with all the analysis on all the three asset classes, namely equity, debt and cash.</p> <p>2. Take the second instance where the customer holds Tokyo Motor (direct investment) and AIM Japan report as his/her holdings. Now on selecting the asset level analysis you will be presented with the analysis on equity (comprising both direct and indirect holding) and cash.</p> <p>3. Take the third instance where the customer holds Tokyo Motor, AIM Japan report and a PM Scheme as his holding. The PM Scheme has AIM Japan report as its constituent. On opting for the asset level analysis, the analysis will be presented as</p> <p>Tokyo Motor (Direct)</p> <p>+ Tokyo Motor (Indirect)</p> <p>+ cash (indirect)</p> <p>+ Tokyo Motor (Indirect due to PMS)</p> <p>+ cash (Indirect due to PMS)</p>	Name	Asset Class	% Holding	Tokyo Motor	Equity	69.81%	Cash	Cash	30.19%	
Name	Asset Class	% Holding									
Tokyo Motor	Equity	69.81%									
Cash	Cash	30.19%									



Field	Description	Mandatory
	<p>Typically the PM Schemes generally constitute of securities under the instrument type equity, debt or Mutual Fund. The constituents of the PMS are customer specific and will be received as an external data feed from the issuer of the scheme. Whereas the sub constituents of securities under the instrument type Mutual Fund will be reinstated as elucidated below. The system also assumes that any restructuring in the constituents of the PM Scheme will be updated on continual basis through a data feed.</p> <p>The details of the composition of the constituents of the Mutual Fund or the Structured product are published by the fund house or the issuer of the Structured Product. Ideally the composition of the Structured product does not change till its maturity. However in the case of Mutual Fund, the constituents are constantly restructured and published in Fact sheets. Fact sheets provide handy information on the current price of the instrument (NAV – Net Asset Value), repurchase/sale price and the break up of the instruments constituents.</p> <p>Some Fund Houses and the issuers of the Structured product confine the constituent's information by revealing partial information. For instance the fact sheet providing only the asset class information on the constituents and its composition. For such scenarios, the administrator will categorize the constituent as 'others' and suffix the asset class name to it. Such securities would be clubbed into their corresponding asset class as specified by the administrator. For instance, others-equity would be club into asset class equity whereas as others –debt would fall into asset class debt.</p> <p> Note that the currency for any security in the Instrument Master including the security denoted under the category others, cannot be classified as 'others'. In such cases the relevant instrument currency is indicated as the currency of the security. The basis for this is, in order to accomplish multi currency accounting at Security, portfolio as well as at the customer currency, the relevant exchange rates are required between all the three levels. By defining the currency as others, the currency conversion would be abridged.</p>	

Field	Description	Mandatory																																										
	<p> Please note that the ability and frequency to provide updated information on the constituents of the mutual fund are dependent upon the providers of data. Hence any delay of data would result in display of obsolete figures by the system.</p> <p>Lets understand this further with the following example:</p> <p>AIM Japan Report fact sheet has provided the information on 60% holdings information in its constituents; Tokyo Motor and cash. The administrator is required to classify the balance 40% under the category others.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Asset Class</th><th>% Holding</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Tokyo Motor</td><td>Equity</td><td>49.81%</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cash</td><td>Cash</td><td>10.19%</td></tr> <tr> <td>Others</td><td>Others</td><td>40%</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Now consider, the fact sheet has provided additional information that equity asset class constitutes 80% of the above fund's composition. The instrument master will be updated as</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Asset Class</th><th>% Holding</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Tokyo Motor</td><td>Equity</td><td>49.81%</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cash</td><td>Cash</td><td>10.19%</td></tr> <tr> <td>Others-Equity</td><td>Equity</td><td>30.19%</td></tr> <tr> <td>Others</td><td>Others</td><td>9.81%</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Augmenting this further, suppose the AIM Japan Report scheme was issued in USD and the currency details of the constituents are given as</p> <p>Tokyo Motor - Yen and Cash - USD and that the entire equity holdings are in Yen then the instrument master would be updated as</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Asset Class</th><th>Currency</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Tokyo Motor</td><td>Equity</td><td>Yen</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cash</td><td>Cash</td><td>USD</td></tr> <tr> <td>Others-Equity</td><td>Equity</td><td>Yen</td></tr> <tr> <td>Others</td><td>Others</td><td>USD</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Asset Class	% Holding	Tokyo Motor	Equity	49.81%	Cash	Cash	10.19%	Others	Others	40%	Name	Asset Class	% Holding	Tokyo Motor	Equity	49.81%	Cash	Cash	10.19%	Others-Equity	Equity	30.19%	Others	Others	9.81%	Name	Asset Class	Currency	Tokyo Motor	Equity	Yen	Cash	Cash	USD	Others-Equity	Equity	Yen	Others	Others	USD	Display only
Name	Asset Class	% Holding																																										
Tokyo Motor	Equity	49.81%																																										
Cash	Cash	10.19%																																										
Others	Others	40%																																										
Name	Asset Class	% Holding																																										
Tokyo Motor	Equity	49.81%																																										
Cash	Cash	10.19%																																										
Others-Equity	Equity	30.19%																																										
Others	Others	9.81%																																										
Name	Asset Class	Currency																																										
Tokyo Motor	Equity	Yen																																										
Cash	Cash	USD																																										
Others-Equity	Equity	Yen																																										
Others	Others	USD																																										

Field	Description	Mandatory
	<p>Enhancing our comprehension on PM Schemes, the actual units held in the constituents in all the instruments types expect Mutual Fund will be considered for the purpose of analysis.</p> <p>The deduction of the units in the instrument type Mutual Fund and Structured Products for the purpose of analysis has been elucidated below. Please note that the methodology is the same for both, holdings held directly in these instrument types or through the PM Schemes.</p> <p>With the exception of securities under the asset class –equity &amp; debt, for the securities under the other asset classes, the holdings composition, denominated as 'number of units' will be defaulted to Null.</p> <p>In case of equity &amp; debt, the number of units held in each security will be computed based on the percentage composition of each security, as provided in the fact sheet.</p> <p>This is explained with an example given below:</p> <p>If the customer holds 100 units HSBC Opportunities fund and the fund has ACC as one of its constituents. The fact sheet has reported 25% investment of the total fund value of Rs. 1,00,000.00 in ACC. The number of units for ACC (indirect holding) would be computed as:</p> <p>Assume current NAV = 11.00</p> <p>Indirect holding in ACC = 25% of 100 units = 25 units</p> <p>Value of the customers ACC holding in the MF = <math>25 \times 11 = 275</math></p> <p>In case of direct holdings, for the securities under the asset class equity and bonds, commodities the units include the purchased and additional units received on account of stock corporate actions.</p> <p>Similar to the indirect holdings, for the direct holdings under asset class like insurance, metal, real estate, gems, cash and others, the units are defaulted to null by the system.</p> <p>Under the equity instrument type, for a security of the same class, the indirect holdings of the customer would be combined with the direct holdings (if any).</p>	

Field	Description	Mandatory
	<p>In the above example if the customer already holds 100 shares (direct holdings), then the entire holdings of the customer in ACC would be displayed as 125 units.</p> <p>Let us understand how to calculate the market value at the asset level.</p> <p>The market value at the asset level represents the sum of the market values for all the direct and indirect held securities, in the particular asset denominated in the customer preferred currency.</p> <p>For the securities held as direct holdings and falling under the asset type equity, commodities and traded bonds the market price will be as received from external data vendors. For the other securities under the asset class insurance, others, metals, gems, real estate and non traded bonds the price will be as per the last manual update. For the accounts held under the instrument type CASA and TD, which are categorized under the asset class cash, the most recent updated cash balance from these accounts will be considered as the market price.</p> <p>Analogous, to the direct holdings, the indirect holdings in equity and traded bonds will also receive price feeds from the external data vendors.</p> <p>However, for the other indirect holdings falling under the asset class debt, real estate, cash and others, the market value would be based on % of the asset value on the total value of the fund. The number of units, as mentioned earlier, will be defaulted to null.</p> <p>Consider the example, wherein the fund has invested 2% of the total fund value of 100000 in ICICI Infrastructure Bond. The market value of the bond would be displayed as <math>= 0.02 \times 100000 \times 1 = 2000</math>.</p>	
% of Total	<p>This is the percentage composition of the asset under consideration with respect to the total value of all the assets.</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the asset class would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display Only


At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.


As explained earlier, on clicking any of the assets, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected asset category.

#### Asset Details

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities (direct and indirect) in the selected asset class.	Display only
Currency	The currency of the security displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only.
Units	<p>Units are computed for the indirect holdings in the equity asset class as described in the previous table. For the indirect holding in other securities under the other asset classes, the holdings are defaulted to 1.</p> <p>In case of direct holdings for the securities under the asset class equity, commodities and bonds, the units include the purchased and additional units received on account of stock corporate actions.</p> <p>For the direct holdings under asset class like insurance, metal, real estate, cash, gems, and others, the units are defaulted to null by the system.</p> <p>For the holdings in the PM Scheme, the constituents will be regarded as Direct holdings and the procedure of computation will be analogous as mentioned above. The sub constituents of the holdings in the PM Scheme will considered as Indirect holdings and will be computed as elucidated above.</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market value	<p>Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.</p> <p>For the accounts held under the instrument type CASA and TD, which are categorized under the asset class cash, the most recent updated cash balance from these accounts will be considered as the market price.</p> <p>Similar to the direct holdings, the indirect holdings in equity and traded bonds will also receive price feeds from the external data vendors.</p> <p>However, for the other indirect holdings falling under the asset class debt, real estate, cash and others, the market value would be based on % of the asset value on the total value of the fund.</p> <p>The system also provides the hyperlink to the Total Market Value giving the details of Unrealized Realized Gain/Loss summary in Portfolio and Client Currency against each instrument with break-up between Price and Currency impact.</p>	Display only
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in an asset, as compared to the total market value of the asset. Please note the values are computed in the customer preferred currency.	Display only

 Buy Price, QTY and Market Price columns remains blank for CASA and TD instrument types.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the asset class, the Multi-Dimensional Model pop up appears as shown in the screenshot below. This Multi-dimensional model displays the recommended dimension wise allocation based on the selected asset class. In addition, it also displays the comparison between the actual vs recommended. The system displays the Actual value of different dimensions based on the flag 'Asset Decomp' flag maintained at bank parameters level.

 The Multi-dimensional icon is also displayed for Household and Group members.

Screen:

Asset Class	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
Equity	6.09%	50%	-44%

Instrument Analysis Group	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
Equity	60%	40%	20%
PMS	40%	0%	40%
MF Equity	0%	30%	-30%
SP	0%	30%	-30%

Instrument Type	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
Equity	60%	50%	10%
Mutual Fund	30%	25%	5%
Structured Product	0%	15%	-15%
Bond	10%	10%	0%

Region	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
North America	50%	60%	-10%
Asia	30%	0%	30%
Europe	20%	40%	-20%

Currency	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
USD	80%	70%	10%
Euro	12%	30%	-18%
Singapore Dollar	18%	0%	18%

Market Cap	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
Large Cap	100%	60%	40%
Mid cap		40%	-40%

Industry	Actual	Recommended	Deviation
IT	40%	40%	0%
Pharma	20%	0%	20%
Infrastructure	30%	0%	30%
Real Estate	10%	60%	-50%

**Figure 3.31: Portfolio Analysis – Multi-Dimensional pop up**

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.



If the Category is selected as Asset Class then in the Gain Loss Summary pop up, the system displays the details in the customer preferred currency.

View of Direct and Indirect holding in an Instrument in Portfolio Analysis Screen

- View of direct and indirect holding details in a particular instrument will be available for Instrument Type – Equity, Bonds and Commodity.
- The user can view the direct and indirect holding details in a particular instrument when selects a category as Asset Class, Region, Currency, Industry and Market Capitalization; note that for Industry and Market Cap, only Equity instruments are considered.

- Cases where indirect holding is because of MF Type Fund of Fund then only parent instrument name would be displayed under the source name and not the sub constituent scheme name; though the number of units, market value and composition % would be based on the complete recursive decomposition.
- The user on clicking the instrument name hyper link can view the direct and indirect holding details. Following pop up will be displayed:

**Screen:**

Instrument Source DetailsMac MF		
Instrument Name	Instrument Type	Composition %
Mac EQ	Direct Eq	50.00%
Equity Axis	Direct Eq	40.00%
Krina Future Inst	FUTURES	10.00%

**Figure 3.32: Instrument Source Details Window**

Attribute	Description
Header	Displays following: “Instrument Source Details: <i>Instrument Name</i> ”
Source	For direct investment, system should display source name as Direct and for indirect holding display source name as the parent instrument name for e.g.; if by investing in Fidelity equity fund, customer has indirect holding in IBM then under source name Fidelity equity fund name is displayed
No. of Units	Total number of units held in that instrument under that source
Market Value	Market value which will be Price * Units
Composition %	% holding of that source wrt total holdings in that instrument



### 3.4.4 View Portfolio Analysis – By Region

Screen:



**Figure 3.33: Portfolio Analysis – By Region Screen**

#### Screen Navigation:

To view the analysis for 'Region' please ensure that the Region option has been selected from the Category drop-down list.

Now, when the user selects the option 'By region' for your analysis, all the holdings of the customer get organized in accordance to the different regions and are displayed in the customer preferred currency.

Adjacent to the second tab is a tab displaying the graphical depiction of the type of view selected.

For further analysis of the holdings in each region, the user can click on the hyper link under each region in the second tab. An additional tab will appear below the second tab, which will provide further information and analysis about the securities held in the selected region.

The detailed descriptions of fields are given below:

#### Region

Field	Description	Mandatory
Region	All the regions in which the holdings of the selected customer span across are displayed. Each region is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyperlink to view a tab displaying additional analysis of all the securities in the selected region.	Display only
Market value	This is computed as mentioned in the 'Asset' class analysis.	Display only
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the holdings in a region under consideration with respect to the total value of all the holdings across all the regions.  The sum of the percentages across all the regions would sum up to 100%.	Display Only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

As explained earlier, on clicking any of the regions, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected region.

#### Region Details

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities (direct and indirect) in the selected region.	Display only
Currency	The currency of the security displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only.
Units	Units are computed for the indirect holdings in the equity instrument type as described in the previous table	Display only
Market value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.	Display only
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in a region, as compared to the total market value of the region. The values are computed in the customer preferred currency.	Display only

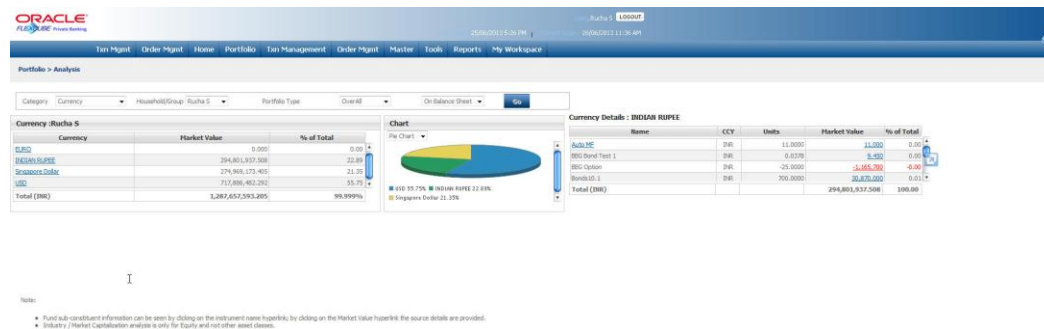


Units field remains blank for all amount based instruments types like CASA and TD.

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

### 3.4.5 View Portfolio Analysis – By Currency

Screen:



**Figure 3.34: Portfolio Analysis – By Currency Screen**

Screen Navigation:

To view the analysis for 'Currency' please ensure that the Currency option has been selected from the Category drop-down list.

The second tab on the left side displays the analysis for the holdings across different currencies, for the selected customer. The holdings span across all his/her portfolios.

The different currencies are maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.

Now, when the 'Currency' option is selected for analysis, all the holdings of the customer get organized in accordance to the different currencies. Note that values are however displayed in the customer preferred currency.

1. The tab adjacent to the second tab displays the graphical depiction of the type of view selected. The user has been provided with the flexibility to view the graph either as a pie chart or as a bar chart. This can be done by selecting the appropriate type of graph from the drop-down list provided in this tab.

In the bar chart, the y axis represents the % of total i.e % composition of holdings in a currency in comparison to the total composition of the customer's holdings across all the currencies. This % is arrived at by calculating all the associated amounts in the customer preferred currency. The x axis names the different currencies across which the holdings of the customer span.

2. For further analysis of the holdings in each currency, you can click on the hyper link under each region in the second tab. An additional tab will appear below the second tab, which will provide further information and analysis about the securities held in the selected currency.

**Understanding the Screen:** Irrespective of the type of login (customer or RM), the system facilitates to analyze the holdings across all the portfolios. A currency in which the customer does not have any holdings will not be displayed in the screen. Blank tabs will be displayed if the customer is yet to make any investments.

The detailed descriptions of fields are given below:

#### Currency

Field	Description	Mandatory
Currency	All the currencies in which the holdings of the selected customer span across are displayed. Each currency in the tab has a hyper link. Click on the hyper link to view a tab displaying additional analysis of all the securities in the selected currency.	Display only
Market value	This is computed as mentioned in the 'Asset' class analysis.  The market value for a particular currency represents the sum of the market values for all the direct and indirect held securities, in the particular currency denominated in the customer preferred currency.	Display only
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the holdings in a currency under consideration with respect to the total value of all the holdings across all the currencies.  The sum of the percentages across all the currencies would sum up to 100%.	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

As explained earlier, on clicking any of the regions, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected currency.

#### Region Details

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities (direct and indirect) in the selected currency.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Currency	The currency of the security displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only.
Units	Units are computed for the indirect holdings in the equity & debt asset class as described in the previous table and in the section on asset class analysis. For the indirect holding in other securities under the other asset classes, the holdings are not displayed.	Display only
Market value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.	Display only
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in a currency, as compared to the total market value across all the holdings in that currency. Please note the values are computed in the customer preferred currency.	Display only

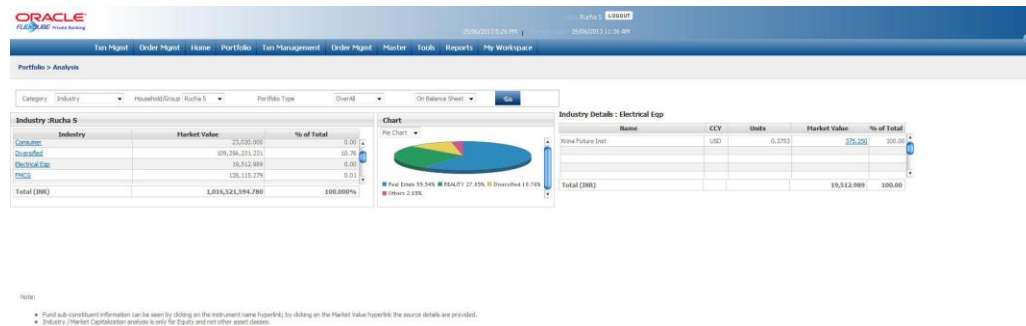


Units field remains blank for CASA and TD instrument types.

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

### 3.4.6 View Portfolio Analysis – By Industry

## Screen:



**Figure 3.35: Portfolio Analysis – By Industry Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

To view the analysis for 'Industry' please ensure that the Industry option has been selected from the Category drop-down list of views.

The first table on the left side displays the analysis for the different industries for the selected customer. As we understand, the industry analysis is applicable only to the holdings in equity instrument type which includes both direct and indirect holdings across all the portfolios.

The different industries to be used by the bank are identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.

Now, when the user selects the option 'By Industry' for your analysis, all the holdings, in equity get organized in accordance to the different industries and are displayed in the customer preferred currency. This sorting of the holdings is done across all the portfolios of the customer.

1. The tab adjacent to the second tab is a tab displaying the graphical depiction of the selected type.. The user has been provided with the flexibility to view the graph either as a pie chart or as a bar chart. This can be done by selecting the appropriate type of graph from the drop-down list provided.

In the bar chart, the y axis represents the % of total i.e % composition of an industry in comparison to the total composition of the customer's holdings in equity across all the industries. This % is arrived at by calculating all the associated amounts in the customer preferred currency. The x axis names the different industries in which the customer has invested for his equity holding.

2. For further analysis of the holdings in each industry, you can click on the hyper link under industry in the first table. An additional table will appear below, which will provide further information and analysis about the securities held in the selected industry.

The detailed descriptions of fields are given below:

**Industry**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Industry	All the industries in which the equity holdings of the selected customer span across are displayed. Each industry is displayed with a hyperlink. Click on the hyperlink to view a tab displaying additional analysis of all the securities in the selected industry.	Display only
Market value	This is computed as mentioned in the 'Asset' class analysis. However, only the securities within the category of equity instrument type are considered for computation.	Display only
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the industry under consideration with respect to the total value of all the industries.  The sum of the percentages across all the industries would sum up to 100%.	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

As explained earlier, on clicking any of the industry, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected industry.

**Industry Details**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities in equity (direct and indirect) in the selected industry.	Display only
Currency	The currency of the security displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only.
Units	Units are computed for the indirect holdings as described in the previous table.  In case of direct holdings the units include the purchased and additional units received on account of stock corporate actions.	Display only
Market value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.  The market price will be as received from external data vendors.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
% of Total	This is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in an industry, as compared to the total market value of all the securities in the industry. Please note the values are computed in the customer preferred currency.	Display only

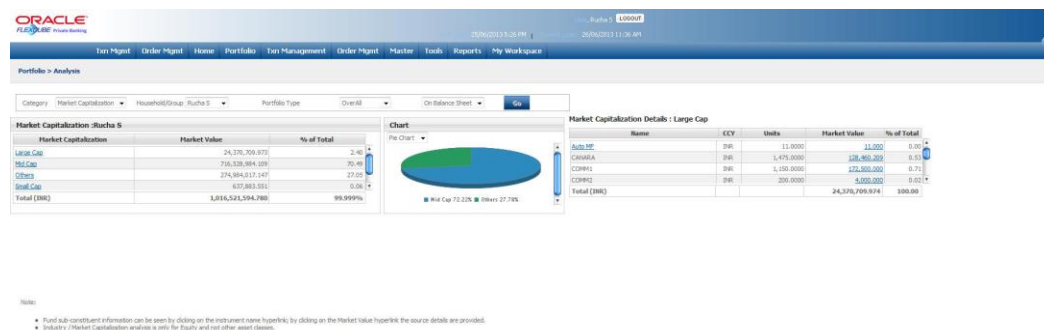


This section displays the details at Customer level across all portfolio holdings grouped by Industry. Only the instruments of Asset Class 'EQ' are considered and are displayed in this section. Since CASA and TD instruments are not classified as Asset Class 'Equity' and they represents some appropriate Asset Class like Cash or Liquid etc, these Instrument types are not displayed in this section.

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

### 3.4.7 View Portfolio Analysis – By Market Capitalization

Screen:



**Figure 3.36: Portfolio Analysis – By Market Capitalization Screen**

Screen Navigation:

To view the analysis for 'Market Capitalization' please ensure that the Market Capitalization option has been selected from the Category drop-down list.

The first table on the left side displays the analysis for the different segments of the market capitalization for the selected customer. Similar to the industry analysis, the analysis on market capitalization is also applicable only to the holdings in equity instrument type which includes both direct and indirect holdings across all the portfolios.

The different segments of market capitalization to be used by the bank are identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.



Now, when the user selects the option 'By Market Capitalization' for analysis, all the holdings, in equity get organized in accordance to the different segments of market capitalization and are displayed in the customer preferred currency. This sorting of the holdings is done across all the portfolios of the customer.

1. The tab adjacent to first table is a tab displays the graphical depiction of the type of view selected by the user. The user has been provided with the flexibility to view the graph either as a pie chart or as a bar chart. This can be done by selecting the appropriate type of graph from the drop box provided in this tab.

In the bar chart, the y axis represents the % of total i.e % composition of a segment in market capital as compared to the total composition of the market capital across the customer's holdings in equity. This % is arrived at by calculating all the associated amounts in the customer preferred currency. The x axis names the different segments in the market capital in which the customer has invested for his equity holding.

2. For further analysis of the holdings in each segment of market capital, you can click on the hyper link under each segment in the first table. An additional tab will appear below , which will provide further information and analysis about the securities held in the selected market capital.

The screens on Analysis 'By Industry' and 'By Market Capitalization' are similar and so are the fields in all the three screens.

The detailed descriptions of fields are given below:

#### Market Capitalization

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market Capital	All the segments of the market capital in which the equity holdings of the selected customer span across are displayed. Each segment in the tab has a hyper link. Click on the hyper link to view a tab displaying additional analysis of all the securities in the selected segment.	Display only
Market value	Is computed as mentioned in the 'Asset' class analysis. However, only the securities within the category of equity instrument type are considered for computation.	Display only
% of Total	Is the percentage composition of the segment of market capital under consideration with respect to the total value of all the segments.  The sum of the percentages across all the segments would sum up to 100%.	Display only

At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

As explained earlier, on clicking any of the segments in market capital, in the earlier tab, displays a tab, representing a detailed analysis of all the securities in the selected segment.

### Market Cap Details

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the names of all the securities in equity (direct and indirect) in the selected segment.	Display only
Currency	The currency of the security displayed is, as captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only.
Units	Units are computed for the indirect holdings as described in the previous table.  In case of direct holdings the units include the purchased and additional units received on account of stock corporate actions.	Display only
Market value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.  The market price will be as received from external data vendors.	Display only
% of Total	Is the percentage composition of the market value of a security in a segment of market capital, as compared to the total market value of all the securities in the segment. Please note the values are computed in the customer preferred currency.	Display only



This section displays the details at Customer level across all portfolio holdings grouped by Market Cap. Only the instruments of Asset Class 'EQ' are considered and are displayed in this section. Since CASA and TD instruments are not classified as Asset Class 'Equity' and they represents some appropriate Asset Class like Cash or Liquid etc, these Instrument types are not displayed in this section.

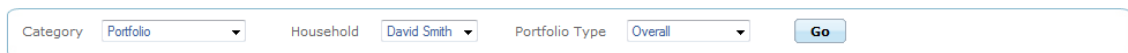
At the end of the tab, the last row displays the sum of all the above fields in the customer preferred currency.

### Introduction of Household Concept

An important aspect of Wealth Management is the ability for the user to track the holdings across the various members of the household in a single window. Likewise it is also essential for user to view the analysis of the household holdings in different dimensions in a single window. This feature of viewing the analysis of the holdings across the household members was introduced in the Release 1.3. The user can thus view the analysis for the customer or for any individual member of his household or can even observe a consolidated analysis across all the members including the customer.

As per Release 1.2, all the analysis dimensions considered the consolidated holdings of the customer across his/her portfolios, excluding the analysis dimension, 'Portfolio', which considered the holdings of the customer in individual portfolios. The Release 1.3 has introduced additional flexibility to the user, enabling him/her to view the various analysis dimensions for each individual portfolio.

Let us now proceed to understand the modifications done to the screen in order to accommodate the new functionalities. As per our understanding to this point, in the existing screen it was essential for the user to opt for a category/dimension of analysis before proceeding to drill into the analysis. This first tab in the screen providing the facility to opt for the category of analysis has been modified in Release 1.3 to include two additional fields 'Household' and 'Portfolio Type'. The screen shot of the tab is as given below

A screenshot of a web application interface showing a search or filter bar. It contains three dropdown menus: 'Category' with 'Portfolio' selected, 'Household' with 'David Smith' selected, and 'Portfolio Type' with 'Overall' selected. To the right of these dropdowns is a blue 'Go' button.

**Figure 3.37: Household screen**

The field 'Category' provides the various dimensions of analysis as a list of values in the drop down field. The field will default to the analysis dimension 'Portfolio'.

The field household will display the names of each household member including that of the customer. The names of the household member will be retrieved as captured in the screen 'Household'. By selecting a member from this list the user will be able to examine the chosen dimension of analysis for that particular member. In addition to the names of the members and the customer, the field will also provide an option 'Household'. The user can opt for this particular alternative to view the chosen dimension of analysis of the holdings spanning across the entire household.

The third field facilitates the user to select the type of portfolio for which he desires to view the chosen dimension of analysis. This drop down field will display three options to the users as a list of values viz., RM Managed, Self Managed and Overall. The RM Managed portfolios include the holdings in the RM Managed and Discretionary portfolios whereas the Self Managed portfolio indicates and includes the holdings in both the Self Managed and Held Away portfolios. By opting for the option 'Overall', the user will indicate his preference of viewing the chosen dimension of analysis for the chosen member across the portfolios. This field will default to the option 'Overall'.

These three fields can be used in various permutations to suit the needs of the user.

## 3.5 **Simulator**

**Description:** The simulator is a scenario planning module which helps Relationship Mangers to accurately assist their customers in analyzing their portfolio by evaluating, comparing and illustrating. It facilitates mock investments on their portfolios and immediately views the results. This offers tremendous advantage as customer can test the efficiency of all investment choices made without actually making the investments.

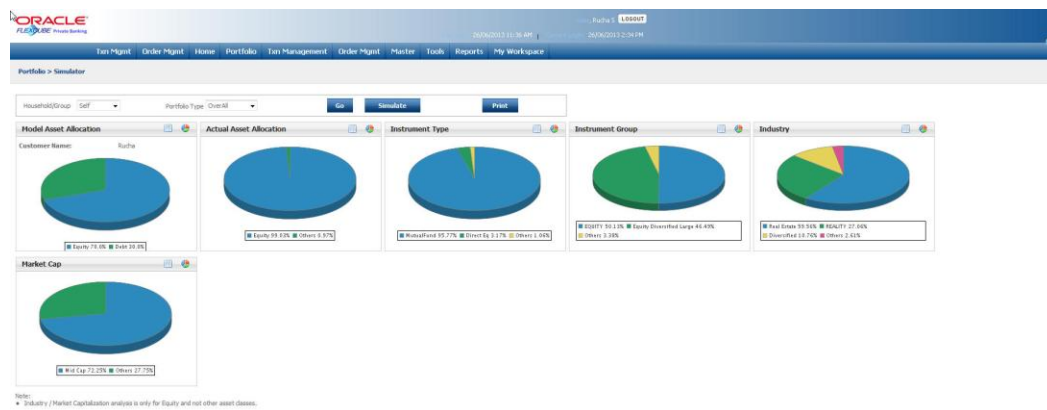
FCPB Simulator provides scenario management and simulation technology enabling the user to:

- Visualize, analyze and optimize portfolio at individual family member as well as at household level
- Predict the future portfolio
- Visualize overall portfolio or Managed by RM or Managed by Client

**Customer:** The customer can simulate the holdings across all the portfolios including RM Managed Portfolios.

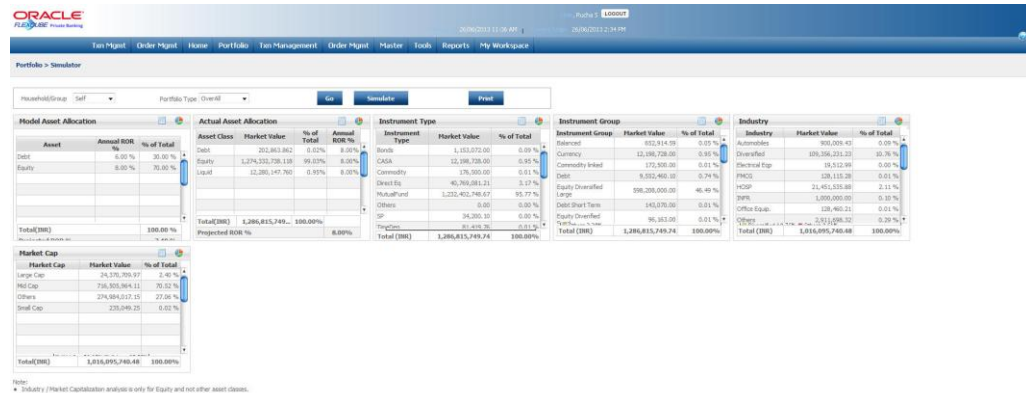
## **Screen:**

### **Screen 1 (Display screen – graphical view)**



**Figure 3.38: Simulator Screen - Graphical View**

## Screen 2 (Display screen – tabular view)



**Figure3.39: Simulator Screen: Tabular View**

## Screen 3 (Additional Info)

To view the additional information, click the Additional Info button.

ASSET ALLOCATION					
Portfolios	Asset Class				
	Real Estate	Debt	Arts	Equity	Cash
Recommended Allocation	30.00%	10.00%	5.00%	50.00%	5.00%
Core RM	0 %	8.04%	0 %	91.95%	0.01%
Damien Self	0 %	0 %	0 %	100.00%	0 %

GEOGRAPHICAL EXPOSURE					
Region	Asset Class				
	Real Estate	Debt	Arts	Equity	Cash
Australia and NZ	0 %	7.47%	0 %	75.40%	0.01%
Europe	0 %	0 %	0 %	9.94%	0 %
North America	0 %	0.56%	0 %	6.62%	0 %

CURRENCY EXPOSURE					
Currency	Asset Class				
	Real Estate	Debt	Arts	Equity	Cash
AUD	0 %	7.47%	0 %	75.40%	0.01%
CAD	0 %	0 %	0 %	6.10%	0 %
EUR	0 %	0 %	0 %	9.94%	0 %
USD	0 %	0.56%	0 %	0.52%	0 %

**Figure 3.40: Asset Allocation Screen**

**Screen 3 (Simulate holdings screen)**

**Portfolio Maintenance > Simulator : Simulate**

	Portfolio Name	Instrument Type	Name	Currency	Market Value
<input type="radio"/>	Self Managed	Direct Eq	EQ-TOYOTA	INR	10,500.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM Managed	Direct Eq	EQ-TOYOTA	INR	7,875.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM Managed	Direct Eq	EQ-TOYOTA	INR	315,000.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM1	Direct Eq	EQ-TOYOTA	INR	525,000.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM2	Direct Eq	EQ-TOYOTA	INR	15,750.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM Managed	Commodity	COMM1	INR	15,000.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM1	Commodity	COMM1	INR	150,000.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM2	Commodity	COMM1	INR	7,500.00
<input type="radio"/>	RM2	Bonds	Bonds10.1	INR	13,230.00

Portfolio:  Instrument Type:   
 Name:   
☐ Units  ☒ Amount   
 Currency:  Region:   
 Asset Class:  Market Cap:   
 Industry:

**Figure 3.41: Simulate Holdings Screen**

**Model Portfolio**

Instrument Type	Name	Weightage (%)	1 Month	3 Months	Returns(%) 6 Months	1 Year	3 Years	Fact Sheet	Analytics
Direct Eq	Mac EQ	40.00	0.00	0.00	-1.28				
Bonds	Mac BOND	60.00	0.01	0.01	7.30				
<b>Portfolio Weighted Average Return</b>		<b>100.00</b>	<b>0.01</b>	<b>0.01</b>	<b>3.89</b>	<b>NA</b>	<b>NA</b>		

**Figure 3.42: Model Portfolio Icon Screen**


### Screen Navigation:

1. After you login, the portfolio creation screen can be accessed through the Portfolio and Simulator sub menu.



### How to Read the Screen:

- On reaching the screen the user can view multiple graphs.
- These graphs depict consolidated holdings of the portfolios in different dimensions like asset class, industry, instrument group, market capitalization and instrument type. The computation and analysis of these different dimensions have been discussed in depth in the section on Portfolio Analysis. To recap, this exhaustive classification allows for higher accuracy in aligning portfolios to pre-decided investment objectives of the customer. The user has a flexibility of having different views of his/her investments depending on the selection. Various combinations supported by the system are:
  - Household/Group – to be shown only if the client is the household/group head
    - Self (Default)
    - Household
  - Portfolio Type
    - Overall (Default)
    - Managed by RM
    - Managed by Client

For example, if the user selects Household and Managed by RM, the information shown will be for only the portfolios managed by RM of all the household members. Also if group is selected then all simulator views are displayed considering selected portfolios of the group.

 Every access of the screen through the main menu will result in renewal of the analysis with the current market price of the securities. To recapitulate, the market price for the securities in the instrument type equity, traded bonds, mutual funds, PMS, specialized product, CASA, TD and structured products are received as data feed from external data vendors. Whereas all the securities under the remaining instrument types require manual updation of the market price.

Along with the analysis of the holdings in different dimensions the screen also displays the Model portfolio associated with the customer (explained in detail in the section on Customer Management).

Though all the analysis dimensions are represented graphically, the user has been provided with the flexibility to alter each depiction to a tabular view. Thus you can flip between the graphical and tabular view by clicking on the  and  buttons respectively for any of the above mentioned dimensions (displayed above in the second screen shot of screen 1)

The analysis tabs will be represented blank for those customers who are yet to make/provide investment details. Similarly, the corresponding Model tab will be blank for those customers who are not associated to any model portfolio.



2. The second (simulator) screen for simulating the holdings can be reached by clicking on the **Simulate** button provided at the bottom of the first screen. The 'Simulator' screen displays the holdings in all instrument types across all the portfolios along with their current market value. The user has the option to simulate by adding new holdings which is attainable by clicking the **Add** button. The user also has the flexibility to either modify or delete any of the current holdings by clicking on the buttons **Modify** or **Delete**. You can wipe off the entire current holdings of the customer by clicking the **Clear List** button and simulate with completely new holdings. After modifying/deleting/adding the new holdings click on the **Return** button, in order to scrutinize the impact of the changes on the holdings. This button leads you back to the screen1, displaying the analysis of the entire holdings which is inclusive of the simulated holdings. Thus allowing you to gauge the impact of the simulations on the various analysis dimensions and evaluate with the model portfolio.

After analyzing the simulated holdings if you revisit the simulator screen again by clicking on the **Simulate** button, you will be displayed with the entire holdings inclusive of the earlier simulated values. This provides the user with the benefit of executing multiple levels of simulations simultaneously by moving to and forth between the two screens. In order to simulate the holdings afresh, the user needs to access the screen 1 again through the main menu.

The user can also view the Simulator report by clicking on the **Print** button.

The simulator report shows the details of the transactions of the simulated portfolio along with its STCG and LTCG at run-time. It also gives the breakup of the simulated portfolio based on Asset Class, Market Cap and Top 10 Industries Exposure.

**STOP** The system does provide with the option to save the simulated holdings. Hence, on every access of the main screen (screen1) through the main menu, the system will refresh the screen and display the analysis based on the actual holdings of the customer.

**STOP** Please note that user can simulate holdings even if he currently does not has any investment nor has any holdings by means of investments made through the FLEXCUBE Private Banking. However this is achievable under the condition that the customer has at least a portfolio created and associated to his/her Customer Id.

**STOP** The holdings of can be simulated only when the customer in active status.

The fields of each tab have been briefly described below:

### **Screen 1**

For simplicity, we have abridged the explanation of this screen into three sections. The first table clarifies the fields on the Model portfolio and the second table elucidates on the fields for the holdings decomposition.

To recap, the user has the option to flip between the graphical and tabular view. In the tables given below, the fields pertaining to the tabular view have been described. Additionally, the corresponding figures from the tabular views have been used for generating the graphs.

#### Model Portfolio

Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset	The assets defined in the particular model (recommended asset allocation as per customer risk profile) are displayed in this field.	Display only
% of Asset	This field defines the proportion allocated to each asset in the model.	Display only
Total	The total weight assigned to all the asset class would at all times sum up to 100%	Display only

Holdings Decomposition: The reader of this section needs to understand the concept of 'decomposition of holdings' as envisaged in the FLEXCUBE Private Banking in order to interpret this screen. However, for thorough understanding of the computation methodologies of the fields please refer to the section on Portfolio Analysis for further details.

#### Actual Asset Allocation

Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset Class	<p>Asset class classification of holdings at customer or household level is displayed.</p> <p>If the Asset Class Decomposition flag is set to Yes, the Actual Asset Allocation tab displays the Asset Class values after considering sub-constituent values.</p> <p>The graph will also consider decomposed values.</p> <p>If the flag is set to No, the system does not consider decomposed values</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market Value	<p>Market value is the product of the market price and quantity.</p> <p>The asset class type of analysis comprises of the direct investments and the indirect investments in the different asset classes. The indirect investments are on account of the holdings in mutual funds, PMS and structured products types of instrument (constituents of mutual fund, PMS and structured product).</p> <p><b>Quantity:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Direct: In case of direct holdings, for the securities under the asset class equity and bonds, the units include the purchased and additional units received on account of stock corporate actions.</li> </ul> <p>For the direct holdings under asset class like insurance, metal, real estate, gems, and others, the units are defaulted to null by the system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indirect: With the exception of securities under the asset class –equity &amp; debt, for the securities under the other asset classes, the holdings composition, denominated as 'number of units' will be defaulted to null.</li> </ul> <p>In case of equity, the number of units held in each security will be computed based on the percentage composition of each security, as provided in the fact sheet.</p> <p>Under the equity asset class, for a security of the same class, the indirect holdings of the customer would be combined with the direct holdings (if any).</p>	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
	<p>Let us understand how to calculate the market value at the asset level.</p> <p>The market value at the asset level represents the sum of the market values for all the direct and indirect held securities, in the particular asset denominated in the customer preferred currency.</p> <p>For the securities held as direct holdings and falling under the asset type equity, and traded bonds the market price will be as received from external data vendors. For the other securities under the asset class insurance, others, metals, gems, real estate and non traded bonds the price will be as per the last manual update.</p> <p>Analogous, to the direct holdings, the indirect holdings in equity and traded bonds will also receive price feeds from the external data vendors.</p> <p>However, for the other indirect holdings falling under the asset class debt, real estate, cash and others, the market value would be based on % of the asset value on the total value of the fund. The number of units, as mentioned earlier, will be defaulted to 1.</p>	
% of total	<p>This is the percentage composition of the asset under consideration with respect to the total value of all the assets.</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the asset class would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display only
Annual ROR%	The performance figures computed using Linked Modified Dietz methodology are displayed here. The returns computed from the first funding date of the asset class (since inception) are displayed here.	

#### Instrument Type

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Type	Instrument type classification of the holdings at customer or household level is displayed here	Display only
Market Value	The market value for a particular instrument type represents the sum of the market values for all the direct and indirect held securities, in customer preferred currency.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
% of total	<p>This is the percentage composition of the holdings in an instrument type under consideration with respect to the total value of all the holdings across all the instrument types.</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the instrument type would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display only

#### Instrument Group

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Group	Instrument group classification of the holdings at customer or household level is displayed here	Display only
Market Value	<p>The market value for a particular instrument group represents the sum of the market values for all the direct and indirect held securities, denominated in the customer preferred currency.</p> <p>The computation methodology is similar to that explained in the previous table on asset class analysis.</p>	Display only
% of total	<p>This is the percentage composition of the holdings in a instrument group under consideration with respect to the total value of all the holdings across all the instrument groups.</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the instrument group would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display only

#### Industry



Field	Description	Mandatory
Industry	All the industries in which the equity holdings of the selected customer span across are displayed.	Display only
Market Value	<p>Only the securities within the category of equity instrument type are considered for computation.</p> <p>The market value is denominated in customer preferred currency.</p>	Display only
% of total	<p>This is the percentage composition of the industry under consideration with respect to the total value of all the industries.</p> <p>The sum of the percentages across all the industries would sum up to 100%.</p>	Display only

## Market Cap

Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset Class	All the segments of the market capital in which the equity holdings of the selected customer span across are displayed.	Display only
Market Value	Only the securities within the category of equity instrument type are considered for computation.  The market value is denominated in customer preferred currency.	Display only
% of total	This is the percentage composition of the segment of market capital under consideration with respect to the total value of all the segments.  The sum of the percentages across all the segments would sum up to 100%.	Display only

## Screen 2

**TAB 1: Displaying the Holdings**

Field	Description	Mandatory
Selection Radio Button	This button enables the user to opt for a particular holding. On selecting the holding, the corresponding data of the security gets displayed in the second tab in the screen. This facilitates for the modification or deletion of the selected holding.   When the CASA/TD or amount based instruments are selected for addition or modification, the system enables the Amount option and disables the Units option in the lower maintenance section.	Display only
Portfolio Name	All the portfolios encompassing all the holdings of the selected customer are displayed.   Portfolios which do not have any holding are not displayed in this screen.	Display only
Instrument type	Displays the instrument type for each of the securities across all the portfolios. The instrument type is displayed as per the data captured in the instrument master table in the database.	Display only
Name	Displays the names of all the securities across all the instrument types and portfolios.	Display only

Field	Description	Mandatory
Market value	Market value is the product of the market price and quantity denominated in the security currency.	Display only

## TAB 2: Modification Tab

The functionality of each of the buttons at the bottom of the screen has been explained below

- **Add:** In order to simulate by adding a new holding, enter the appropriate security particulars in this tab and click the button 'Add'
- **Delete:** Pick the holding to be deleted in the first tab on this screen. This results in the display of the corresponding security details in the second tab. Proceed to click the button 'delete'.
- **Modify:** Select the holding to be modified in the first tab on this screen. Modify the quantity /market value of the selected holding. Click the button 'modify' in order to update the changes made.
- **Clear:** This button assists in undoing the changes made to a selected holding prior to clicking on the 'modify' button.
- **Clear List:** This button aids in clearing the complete holdings of the selected customer.
- **Return:** The impact of the changes on the holdings can be analyzed by clicking this button. This button will lead you back to the first screen of the Simulator.

Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio	The dropdown list displays all the portfolios of the customer including those which are without any holdings.	Yes
Instrument Type	All the instrument types as defined in the Reference Table of the database are displayed in the drop down list.	Yes
Name	<p>This field will be converted into a display field on selection of the instrument types equity, mutual fund, bonds, insurance, commodity or structured product. For the securities under such instrument types, the field will display the name of the security acquired by means of the look up button displayed adjacent to this field.</p> <p>For the securities classified under the instrument type others, PMS, CASA, TD &amp; specialized product this field will be changed into a user enterable field.</p>	Yes

Field	Description	Mandatory
Look Up	<p>Based on the instrument type selected by the user, the search button will be enabled or disabled.</p> <p>On clicking the look up button a pop up window will appear. This pop up window aids in searching the securities under the selected instrument type. The detailed explanation of this security look up screen can be obtained from the section on Miscellaneous functionality.</p>	N/A
Units	<p>To recap, market value is the product of quantity and market price. FCPB provides you the flexibility to simulate with either of the constituents (quantity or price) of the market value.</p> <p>There are two radio buttons in this tab, one adjacent to this field and one adjoining the amount field. Selection of either of the radio button flips the opposite field into disabled or display status. In other words, on selection of the radio button adjacent to this field and entering relevant the units triggers the system to compute the appropriate market value for the units and display it in the amount field. Please note, the system will compute the market value based on the current market price available. Similarly, on selection of the radio button adjacent to the amount field will alter the unit field into a display field.</p> <p>However this principle of flipping the status of the two field's amount and units is available only for the securities under the instrument type Equity, bonds, structured product, commodities and Mutual Fund.</p> <p>This field will be disabled for all the securities under the other instrument types.</p>	Yes
Amount	<p>This price allows the user to simulate with the market price of the existing or new holdings. As mentioned in the details for the preceding field, this field has a radio button adjacent to it. Contrast to the unit's field, this field however is accessible for all the securities under all the types of instrument. However, for the securities under the instrument type Equity, bonds, structured product, commodities and Mutual Fund, on entering the amount, the corresponding value will be displayed in the units field.</p>	Yes
Currency	<p>Similar to the name field, this field also flips between being enabled or disabled depending upon the type of instrument selected. It will be enabled for the securities under the instrument type others. And will be disabled and available as a display field for the securities under other instruments types.</p>	Yes



Field	Description	Mandatory
Region	This field performs in similar manner to the currency field.	Yes
Asset Class	Asset Class field also behaves in similar manner to the currency field..	Yes
Industry	The field 'industry' is pertinent only for securities under the instrument type Equity. This field will display the corresponding industry for the selected security.	Display only
Market Cap	Analogous to the field 'Industry' this field is also pertinent only for securities under the instrument type Equity and will display the corresponding market cap for the selected security.	Display only

### **Screen 3**

#### **Additional Information**

Additional information pop-up facilitates the user to view consolidated holdings of the investments in different dimensions i.e. portfolio exposure asset class wise, currency exposure by asset class and geographical exposure by asset class.


Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset Allocation		
Portfolio Name	Displays all the portfolio name of the customer. First row has recommended asset allocation at customer level	Yes
Asset Class	Displays all the asset classes where customer has some holdings at customer level i.e., if customer has equity holdings in Portfolio A but not in Portfolio B then equity appears as asset class, but if customer does not have real estate in any of the portfolio then Real estate should not be displayed as asset class  All the values should be displayed in %	Yes

Field	Description	Mandatory
Display %	<p>Displays % of asset class to total holding in that portfolio. Suppose customer holding in Portfolio A is 10,000 and he has 5000 in equity, 2000 in debt and 2000 in Insurance and 1000 in Gems then % to be displayed will be Equity 50%, Debt 20%, Insurance 20% and Gems 10% under portfolio A.</p> <p>Formula to be used will be (Asset class holding / total holding)*100</p>	Yes
Geographical Exposure		
Region	Displays all the region name where customer has holdings	Yes
Asset Class	Displays all the asset class where customer has some holdings at customer level i.e., if customer has Equity holdings in Middle east but does not have debt in that region, even then equity should be displayed but if customer does not have real estate holdings in any region then it should not be displayed	Yes
Display %	<p>Displays % of asset class to total holding in that region. Suppose customer holding in Middle East is 20,000 and he/she has 10000 in equity, 4000 in debt and 4000 in Insurance and 2000 in Gems then % to be displayed will be Equity 50%, Debt 20%, Insurance 20% and Gems 10% under Middle east region.</p> <p>Formula to be used will be (Asset class holding / total holding)*100</p>	Yes
Currency Exposure		
Currency	Displays all the currency name where customer has holdings	Yes

Field	Description	Mandatory
Asset Class	Displays all the asset class where customer has some holdings at customer level i.e., if customer has Equity holdings in Euro but does not have debt in that currency, even then equity should be displayed but if customer does not have real estate holdings in any currency then it should not be displayed	Yes
Display %	<p>Displays % of asset class to total holding in that currency. Suppose customer holding in USD currency is \$20,000 and he/she has \$10000 in equity, \$4000 in debt and \$4000 in Insurance and \$2000 in Gems then % to be displayed will be Equity 50%, Debt 20%, Insurance 20% and Gems 10% under USD currency</p> <p>Formula to be used will be (Asset class holding / total holding)*100</p>	Yes

#### Screen 4


#### Model Portfolio Icon

Attribute	Description	Input/ Selectable/ Display	Object Type	Mandatory Y/N	Data Type/ Size	Field Validation	Default Values
 Icon	Model Portfolio Icon	Display	Icon	Y		Display model portfolio icon. Read only pop up window	
Instrument Type	Displays the instrument type for which performance is computed	Display		Y		For a given CLIENT_ID and MODEL_ID combination - Display value from PMS_MODEL_PORTFOLIO.INSTRUMENT_TYPE	

Attribute	Description	Input/ Selectable/ Display	Object Type	Mandatory Y/N	Data Type/ Size	Field Validation	Default Values
Name	Displays the name of the instrument for which the performance is computed	Display		Y		For a given CLIENT_ID and MODEL_ID combination – Display value from MST_INSTRUMENT.INSTRUMENT_NAME.	
Weightage%	Displays the total weightage allocated to corresponding instrument for the selected portfolio for which performance is computed.	Display		Y		For a given CLIENT_ID and MODEL_ID combination - Display value from PMS_MODEL_PORTFOLIO.COMPOSITION	
Return%							
1 Months	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for the first month	Display		Y		For a given Instrument Name, display value from INSTRUMENT_ANALYTICS.RETURNS_FIRST_MONTH	

Attribute	Description	Input/ Selectable/ Display	Object Type	Mandatory Y/N	Data Type/ Size	Field Validation	Default Values
3 Months	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 3 months			Y		For a given Instrument Name, display value from INSTRUMENT_ANALYTICS. RETURNS_THIRD_MONTH	
6 Months	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 6 months			Y		For a given Instrument Name, display value from INSTRUMENT_ANALYTICS. RETURNS_SIXTH_MONTH	
1 Year	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 1 year			Y		For a given Instrument Name, display value from INSTRUMENT_ANALYTICS. RETURNS_FIRST_YEAR	
3 Year	Displays the portfolio performance for the corresponding instrument for last 3 years			Y		For a given Instrument Name, display value from INSTRUMENT_ANALYTICS. RETURNS_THIRD_YEAR	

Attribute	Description	Input/ Selectable/ Display	Object Type	Mandatory Y/N	Data Type/ Size	Field Validation	Default Values
Fact Sheet	Enables the user to view the fact sheet details by clicking on the Fact Sheet icon	Icon		Y		Instrument Fact sheet	
Analytics	Enables the user to view instrument analytics details by clicking on the Analytics icon	Icon		Y		Instrument Analytics Icon	
Portfolio Weighted Average Returns (%)	Displays the weighted average returns of the portfolio for the corresponding time period						

The above screen enables you to view model portfolio of the customer and to analyze the impact of simulation. On clicking  icon, read only pop up screen displays the model portfolio associated with the risk score and Client IT type of the selected customer.

If the returns are not available for any of the model portfolios, then the system displays NA.. Model Portfolio displays only the bank specific model portfolio of Instruments and not customer specific model portfolios.

If there are no bank specified model portfolios, then the system displays the error message as 'Selected customer does not have bank specified model portfolio'.

The user can print a simulation report in PDF format. Report will provide details about the holding details and analysis of simulated portfolio.

## 3.6 Portfolio Alerts

### Description:

The alerts facilitate by providing the customer a round-up of all the relevant information about their investments. When the customer creates an alert, the system runs automatic, predefined searches on the portfolio or the instrument or the exposure or the instrument price they specify. The alerts so set up will be notified either through an email or on their dashboard depending on the notification mode opted by the user.

### User Access levels:

**Customer:** Alerts can be created for RM managed, Self managed and Held away portfolio types.



**Screen:**

**Figure3.42: Portfolio Alerts Screen**

### **Screen Navigation:**

1. After you login, the portfolio alerts screen can be accessed through the Portfolio and Portfolio Alerts sub menu.
2. The screen is also accessible through the Portfolio Maintenance screen. The Portfolio Maintenance screen displays the Market Price with a hyperlink for various instrument types. The system navigates the user to the Portfolio Alerts screen by clicking on this hyperlink. The alerts screen accessed in such a manner is defaulted to the Instrument Price tab.

### **How to read the screen:**

1. The screen displays two sections when you arrive at the screen. The first section is the display section, displaying the list of all the existing alerts which are currently in force. The alerts will be displayed in the descending order of their expiry i.e. the alert which is likely to expire earliest, will be displayed at the top. This section also displays the type of alert and the criteria for triggering the alert. The user can select an alert by clicking on the radio button provided against the corresponding alert.

2. The second section has been embedded with multiple tabs. Currently the system facilitates the users to set up the following categories of alerts, namely, Portfolio, Instrument, and Exposure, Instrument price and Reminder alert. Each of the multiple sub-tabs facilitates in defining a particular alert category. In other words, the user can set up alerts for the various categories by picking the corresponding sub-tab.

On accessing the screen the user will be defaulted to the first sub-tab 'Portfolio'. On selection of any of the existing alerts, depending on the type of alert, the corresponding sub-tab of the alert will be displayed along with the other information of the selected alert.

### **Understanding the Screen:**

The alerts get triggered on realization of certain pre defined criteria's by the user. To start with, let us first understand how alerts are defined in the system. In the Admin module, the system administrator will predefine the validity and the frequency of running the alerts. This is the foremost step required to be done to configure the alerts. The validity of the alert indicates the time period for which the alert will remain in force and will be computed from the date it is triggered. The period will always be denoted in 'days'. The administrator has been provided with the flexibility to schedule the frequency of running the validations for each type of alert. The system will verify and validate for the alerts depending on the frequency opted by the administrator for the particular alert. Currently the following options are available to the administrator viz., daily, weekly, fortnightly, monthly and quarterly. The system will process the alerts on the last business day of the respective periods.

The alerts will be processed as part of the EOD (End of Day calculation) process. The alerts processing will be initiated after all the daily feeds / files are uploaded and the entire process of performance computations are completed.

The user can set up alerts for the customer provided the customer has at least a holding in respective portfolio. The users of the system viz., the RM and the customer have no restriction on the quantity of alerts maintained by them and hence can set up unlimited number of alerts. Once the alert criteria or condition is met, the alert will be displayed either on the dashboard of the user or sent as an email, depending on the option opted by the user.

Each alert has a validity associated to it. Five days prior to the expiry of the alert, a message indicating the expiry of the alert will be presented on the dashboard of the user. Please note that the expiry will be displayed as a system alert. Such expiry messages will have a hyperlink beneath the message. On clicking the hyperlink the user will be automatically guided to the alert maintenance screen. In the alert maintenance screen, all the alerts which are due to expire will have the expiry date in the column 'Expiry' of the first display tab highlighted in red color. The expiry date is displayed with the hyperlink. The user can renew the alert by clicking on the hyperlink, when selected the alert will be renewed for an additional validity period as defined by the administrator for the corresponding type of alert. The screen will get refreshed and new expiry date for the alert will be displayed.

Failure to renew the alert will result in the deletion of the alert from the system after the expiry date.

Let us now proceed to understand each field displayed in the screen. For ease of the readers each tab on the screen has been elucidated one by one.



The table below describes the fields displayed in the first tab.

Field	Description	Mandatory
All Customer	If this check box is selected, it enables the user to view all the alerts set customer wise and for entire hierarchy	N
Customer No and Name	If the RM selects the single customer to view the portfolio alerts then system displays the Customer No & Name at the top of the Portfolio Alerts screen.	Display only
Alert Type	The various categories under which the alerts have been characterized are displayed in this column.	Display only
Alert Criteria	The condition opted by the customer to trigger the alert will be displayed in this column.	Display only
Expiry	<p>This field displays the expiry date of the alert. Each category of alert has validity depending on the period defined by the administrator. Five days prior to expiry an expiry notification message is displayed to the user and at the same time the expiry date in this column will be highlighted in red color. The date is also displayed with hyperlink facilitating the user to renew the date on click of the hyperlink. When the user clicks on the renewal hyperlink, the screen is refreshed and the new expiry date is displayed.</p> <p>Failure to renew an alert, will result in the expiry of the alert and the alert will be deleted from the system in the EOD cycle run on the expiry date.</p>	Display/ link for the alerts which are due to expire

There is a message displayed below the table informing the users about the expiry of the highlighted alerts and requesting them to click on the hyperlink in order to renew the alert.

#### Portfolio:

Let us now proceed to understand each of the multiple sub tabs displayed in the third tab. The first of them and the default one being 'Portfolio'.

#### Screen:

**Figure 3.43: Portfolio Alerts – Portfolio Screen**

The alert defined in this category assists in tracking the performance of the individual portfolios of the customer or of the customer itself. The fields displayed in the tab have been elaborately discussed in the table below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
Alert Type	<p>Each category of alert has further various types of alerts defined under them. The Portfolio performance currently has two types of alerts viz., relative performance and absolute performance. These types of alerts are displayed as a list of drop down values. The screen defaults to absolute type of alert.</p> <p>Absolute: Alert will be generated if the inception to date performance of the portfolio or overall client performance meets criterion defined in the alert.</p> <p>Relative: This type of alert compares the inception to date portfolio performance or overall customer performance relative to the defined respective benchmark, and if this difference (Actual – Benchmark) meets the criterion defined, the alert is generated.</p>	Y
Portfolio Name	<p>The list of all the portfolios associated to the customer will be displayed in this field. The list will be available as drop down value for choosing. Please note that for a customer login, only the portfolios categorized as 'Self Managed' and 'Held Away' will be available in the drop down list. Apart from the portfolios, the user, irrespective of whether RM or Customer will be displayed with an additional value 'Aggregate Portfolio' in the drop down list. Opting for this option will result in setting of an alert for the consolidated performance across all the portfolios of the customer.</p>	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Returns %	<p>This field captures the trigger criteria for the opted category and type of alert. There are two field displayed against this field.</p> <p>The first field has been provided to opt for the various mathematical conditions viz., less than '&lt;', less than equal to '&lt;=', greater than '&gt;', greater than equal to "&gt;=" and equal '='. All these options have been provided as list of drop down values for the user to opt.</p> <p>The next field has been provided for the user to enter values. Please note that the values denote in percentage. The value captured in this field denotes the threshold limit for triggering the alert.</p> <p>Let us understand this field with an example</p> <p>In the condition field the user opts for '&lt;' and captures the value 15 in the percentage field. Hence for the defined alert, a performance of less than 15% will trigger the alert.</p>	Y
Delivery Mode	The Private Banking offers its customers with flexibility to opt for various modes of receiving the alerts. The user can either opt for email intimation, or an alert on the dashboard or even opt for both. All the three options are available to the user as list of values in the drop down field. The email mode will however be displayed as a default value on accessing the screen.	Y
Applicability	Enables the user to select the appropriate recipients for the alerts using the option from the drop-down list.	Y

#### Instrument:

The second tab 'Instrument' enables the user to define performance alerts at an instrument level. The various fields displayed in this tab have been elucidated in the table given below:

The screenshot shows the 'Instrument Performance' form within the 'Instrument' tab. The form has four main input fields, each with a red asterisk indicating it is mandatory:

- Instrument Name:** A dropdown menu with 'Select' as the current value.
- Portfolio Name:** A dropdown menu with 'Select' as the current value.
- Returns %:** A dropdown menu with 'Select' as the current value, followed by a text input field.
- Delivery Mode:** A dropdown menu with 'Select' as the current value.

At the bottom of the form, there are four buttons: 'Add', 'Modify', 'Clear', and 'Delete'.

**Figure 3.44: Portfolio Alerts – Instrument Screen**

Field	Description	Mandatory
-------	-------------	-----------

Instrument Name	All the list of customers holdings across all his portfolios are displayed in this field. However, for a customer login the list will be restricted to the extent of his holdings in Self Managed and Held Away portfolio.	Y
Portfolio Name	On selection of a particular instrument, the portfolio in which the holding is held will be displayed in this field. In case the same holding is held by the customer in multiple portfolios, the list of the multiple portfolios will be displayed as a drop down list. The user can opt for the relevant portfolio for which he/she intends to set the alert.	Y
Returns %	This field is analogous to the one described for the tab 'Portfolio'.	Y
Delivery Mode	There are three types of Delivery Mode as explained above in Portfolio tab, i.e. dashboard, e-mail, and both.	Y
Applicability	Enables the user to select the appropriate recipients for the alerts using the option from the drop-down list	Y

### Exposure:

The third tab has been provided to delineate alerts on exposures. These alerts can be set and tracked on different dimensions of the customer's holdings viz., industry, currency region, market capitalization and instrument type. The alert for a particular exposure will be triggered when the when the percentage of holdings in a particular subordinate dimension meets the set criteria. To recap, the percentage of holding in a particular subordinate dimension can be deduced by dividing the market value of a particular subordinate dimension under consideration, with the total market value of the dimension and then multiplying the value with 100. For example the exposure of the customer's holdings in pharmaceutical industry can be determined by dividing the market value of the holdings in pharmaceutical industry with the total market value of the holdings across all the industries. The screen shot of the tab 'Exposure' is as given below:

### Screen:

**Figure 3.45: Portfolio Alerts – Exposure Screen**


The various fields displayed in this tab have been elucidated in the table given below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
-------	-------------	-----------

Field	Description	Mandatory
Exposure Type	<p>There are two selectable fields provided for opting for the exposure type. The first field enables to opt for the various dimensions of holdings. The list of values displays industry, currency, region, market capitalization and instrument. These values will be displayed as drop down list.</p> <p>On opting for a particular dimension, the list of values in the adjacent field will get updated to display the corresponding subordinate dimensions. However, the subordinate dimensions so displayed will encompass across the current holdings of the customer. In other words, only those subordinate dimensions in which the customer has holdings will be displayed in this field. All the values will be displayed as a drop down list for the customer to opt.</p>	Y
Exposure %	<p>This field is analogous to the one described for the tab 'Portfolio'.</p> <p>This field captures the trigger criteria for the opted category and type of exposure. There are two field displayed against this field.</p> <p>The first field has been provided to opt for the various mathematical conditions viz., less than '&lt;', less than equal to '&lt;=', greater than '&gt;', greater than equal to "&gt;=" and equal '='. All these options have been provided as list of drop down values for the user to opt.</p> <p>The next field has been provided for the user to enter values. Please note that the values denote in percentage. The value captured in this field denotes the threshold limit for triggering the alert.</p> <p>Let us understand this field with an example</p> <p>In the condition field the user opts for '&lt;' and captures the value 15 in the percentage field. Hence for the defined alert, an exposure of less than 15% will trigger the alert.</p>	Y
Delivery Mode	There are three types of Delivery Mode as explained above in Portfolio tab, i.e. dashboard, e-mail, and both.	Y
Applicability	Enables the user to select the appropriate recipients for the alerts using the option from the drop-down list	Y

## Instrument Price:

The fourth tab of Portfolio Alerts is provided to set the alerts for Instrument Price. The alerts defined in this category assist the user to track the instrument market price variation on day to day basis.



**Figure 3.46: Portfolio Alerts – Instrument Screen**

If the Portfolio Alerts screen is accessed through the Portfolio Maintenance screen, it displays the existing alerts of the selected customer with Instrument Price as the default tab. In this case, system displays the same instrument name in the Instrument Name field as in the Portfolio Maintenance screen whose market price was clicked.

The fields displayed in the tab have been inscribed in the table below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
Alert Type	Enables the user to track the instrument price in terms of percentage and amount by using the appropriate option from the Alert Type drop-down list.	Y
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument name using the search icon for which alert is to be set.	Y
Price Percentage	Enables the user to select the appropriate option from the list to set the alerts. The alerts can be set for increase or decrease in price percentage.	Y
Last Traded Price	Once the user selects the instrument name, the system auto-populates the last traded price for that instrument	Y
Delivery Mode	Enables the user to select the appropriate delivery mode for Instrument Price alerts	Y
Applicability	Enables the user to select the appropriate recipients for the alerts using the option from the drop-down list.	Y

## Reminder:

The last and final tab of Portfolio Alerts is Reminder. For Reminder alert in view table 'Expiry' column details would be displayed blank.



**Figure 3.47: Portfolio Alerts – Reminder Screen**

The fields displayed in the tab have been inscribed in the table below:

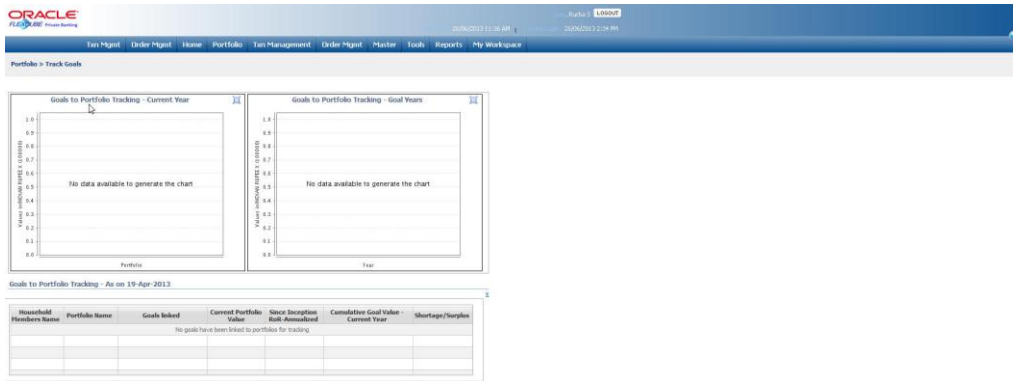
Field	Description	Mandatory
Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate date using the calendar icon till which the alerts are required to be generated	Y
Description	Enable the user to enter the appropriate description of the alert to be set in the Description text box	Y
Delivery Mode	Enables the user to select the appropriate delivery mode for Reminder alerts	Y
Applicability	Enables the user to select the appropriate recipients for the alerts using the option in the drop-down list	Y

## 3.7 Track Goals

**Description:** Once the goals are linked to portfolios, they can be tracked using the Track Goals screen. In the screen, the portfolios linked to goals are projected to future goal years to determine whether they grow up to the goal value in defined goal year. The current RoR of the linked portfolio is used to project the portfolio value in the goal year. The screen also displays the appropriate shortage/surplus in the goal year which helps the user to understand whether the customer is on right track to meet the defined financial goals.


### User Access levels:


**Customer:** The screen is also accessible by the customer to track the financial goals.



**Figure 3.48: Track Goals – Screen**

### **Screen Navigation:**

Login to the system as Customer user and select Portfolio → Track Goals and click on the  icon located at top right hand side corner of Goals to Portfolio Tracking – Current Year chart.

 **Goals to Portfolio Tracking – As on date and Goals to Portfolio Tracking – Goal Years** tabular sections with detailed data do not appear simultaneously. At any point of time only one table appears by clicking on the respective pop-up icons.

The Goals to Portfolio Tracking – Current Year chart displays Linked Portfolio Names on x-axis and Cumulative Goal Value – Current Year & Current Portfolio Value on y-axis respectively wherein the Goals to Portfolio Tracking – Goal Year chart displays Goal Years on x-axis and Cumulative Goal Value of Goals maturing at Goal Year & Projected Portfolio Value on y-axis respectively.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Goals to Portfolio Tracking – Current Year</b>		
Household Member's Name	Displays the name of the Household member name selected to track the goals	
Portfolio Name	Displays the name of the portfolio to which goals are linked	
Goals Linked	Displays all the goals linked to the portfolio	Y
Current Portfolio Value	Displays the latest portfolio value	Y
Since Inception RoR	Displays the since inception RoR of the portfolio	Y
Cumulative Goal Value- Current Year	Displays the sum total of all CURRENT YEAR GOAL VALUES of the goals linked	Y



Field	Description	Mandatory
Shortage/Surplus	Displays shortage/surplus for the selected goals in current year with respect to the portfolios they are linked	Y
<b>Goals to Portfolio Tracking – Goal Years</b>		
Portfolio Name	Displays the name of the portfolio to which goal/s are linked	
Goals Tracked	Displays all the goals linked to the portfolio	Y
Year	Displays the year in which the linked goal occurs	
Cumulative Goal Value	Displays the sum total of all CURRENT YEAR GOAL VALUES of the goals linked	Y
Cumulative Value of Goals Maturing this year	Displays the sum total of all the goals maturing in year mentioned under Year column	Y
Projected Portfolio Value	Displays the portfolio values projected to the goal year	Y
Shortage/Surplus	Displays the shortage/surplus for the selected goals in current year with respect to the portfolio they are linked	Y

---

## 4. Investment Performance Management

This module includes the following capabilities:

- Multi-level ROR performance across investment products
- Benchmark Performance for Regular/Composite Benchmarks
- Risk adjusted returns



Performance Screens are available to the bank only if the bank's license entitles the user to 'Investment Performance Management' module.



Refer to the 'Investment Performance Management' user manual for complete details of Performance Management features in FCPB.

---

## 5. Order Management And Transaction Management

### 5.1 Introduction

FLEXCUBE Private Banking (FCPB) makes it possible to trade and process Equity and Mutual Fund transactions.

While FCPB facilitates order management for Equity, Mutual Funds, Insurance, SP & Alternatives PMS, Commodity, Futures, Options, Forex and Bonds, it supports transaction management for all asset classes including bonds, arts, gems, metals and real estate. This product provides all of the tools FCPB needs for the entire transaction processing purchase, sale, and corporate action to computation of accrued interest. Designed from inception as a global system, FCPB provides full multi-currency capabilities.



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and transaction management capabilities for all the instrument types supported by FCPB, but whether a particular order management UI and processing feature would be available to the bank or not depends on whether the bank's license entitles them to the transaction management and Order management module for that instrument type.

#### **Key Benefits**

- Full support for multi-currency transactions
- Pre-trade compliance checking
- Electronic order routing and trade execution for Equity and Bonds
- Supports online review of transaction history

#### **Understanding Transaction Management**

To recap what we had explained in the section on Portfolio Valuation, the customer has the option of creating multiple portfolios under the type Self Managed and Held Away based on the setting done at Portfolio type master screen.

The Self Managed portfolio is intended to be managed by the customer independently; although an RM, can create as well as transact on behalf of the customer in his/her 'Self Managed' portfolio. The Held Away portfolio facilitates in capturing the holdings which are held away from the bank. With the inclusion of held away assets the user can have a single consolidating view of customer's entire holdings.

The FCPB currently facilitates trade order management only for the securities under the instrument type Mutual Fund, Equity, Bonds, Structured Products, Insurance, Futures, Options and Forex. The trade affiliated orders can be initiated either through the Order Management screen.

For all the other securities classified under various other instrument types, the user can capture the post trade transactions into the relevant portfolios.

## 5.2 Equity Order Management



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Equity' instrument type, but the features of Equity order management UI and processing would be available to the bank, only if the bank's license entitles them to 'Order Management' module and the 'Traded Securities' module.

### Description:

Equity represents a share of ownership in a corporation. As a unit of ownership, equity typically carries voting rights that can be exercised in corporate decisions. An owner of a company's equity is also entitled to share in the profits of that company. This participation usually takes place in two ways:

1. A dividend (distribution of earnings) paid by the company to the share owners
2. An appreciation in the price of the stock (capital gain) generated by the future prospects of the company

Equity has no maturity date; the shareholders are entitled to these earnings for as long as they own the shares and the company is in business.

### Equity Markets:

An equity (or stock) market is the place where companies issue shares of stock and investors purchase and sell these shares. These markets usually have three types of participants:

1. Investors
2. Issuers
3. Financial intermediaries: brokers and dealers

Essentially, **investors** have capital and need opportunities to invest; **issuers** need capital. Brokers and dealers are financial intermediaries. **Brokers** arrange for the issuers and investors to complete a deal; **dealers** purchase securities from issuers and sell them to investors.

### **Equity Market Transactions**

There are essentially three types of transactions in the equities market:

1. An initial public offering,
2. A seasoned offering (both 1 and 2 are **primary market transactions**), and

3. An investor-to-investor sale of securities.

### **Primary Market Transactions**

**Initial Public Offering (IPO):** In an initial public offering, a privately-held company offers shares in the company through the equity markets for the first time. This is often referred to as "taking a company public."

**Seasoned Offering:** A company offers additional shares to investors after the initial public offering. This is called a "seasoned" offering because shares of the company have been listed on an exchange and have been trading for some time.

IPOs and seasoned offerings are referred to as primary market transactions because companies sell stock directly to investors.



FCPB currently does support for purchasing securities through IPO.

### **Secondary Market Transactions**

**Investor-to-investor Transactions:** The third type of equity market transaction is the sale of a company's stock by one investor to another. The company does not receive or pay any money in this transaction, so it is often referred to as a secondary market transaction.


For example, if one investor sells 100 shares of General Motors stock to another investor through an exchange, it is considered a secondary market transaction and has no effect on General Motors' balance sheet.


There are various methods of buying stocks in the secondary market. The most common means is through a stock broker. Most trades are actually done through brokers listed with a stock exchange. There are several markets (or exchanges) to buy and sell equity securities. A company's stock must be accepted for trading, or "listed," on a particular exchange. This acceptance is based on the ability of the company to meet certain minimum size requirements and also on the amount of capital the company has raised in the public markets.


Selling stock is procedurally similar to buying stock. Generally the investor wants to buy low and sell high, although a number of reasons may induce an investor to sell at a loss, e.g., to avoid further loss.


Orders are matched automatically by the system. Where an order does not find a match, it remains in the system till a fresh order comes in or the earlier order is cancelled or modified. The status of the order can be monitored through the Order Book of the FCPB.


The FCPB trading system provides tremendous flexibility to the users in terms of kinds of orders that can be placed on the system. Several time related (day, immediate or cancel) or price related (buy/sell limit and stop loss orders).

 Every order initiated through the FCPB will have a unique transaction id associated to it. The FCPB assumes that this identification would be a common interfacing attribute between the external broker system and the FCPB.

 If updating the risk score is mandatory in the bank parameters screen, then risk score of a client needs to be updated in FCPB before placing any order, else the system will display error and the user will not be able to place orders. This is applicable to all order capture screens.

 Exception approval can be taken from the designated authorities to place an order when the risk profile of the client is not updated and the approval is valid only for a day.

 Any order placed from customer login will display an order confirmation screen.

 If the restrictions are found while placing the order, system does not allow the user to place the order and displays an appropriate error message using the exception framework. These restrictions are validated only for Buy and SIP orders.

### 5.2.1 Equity Order Capture

#### User Access Levels:

**Customer:** Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'.

## **Screen:**

Oracle FLEXCUBE Private Banking

User: Tulika Verma Current Login: 01/02/2013 3:20 PM Last Login: 01/02/2013

Order Mgmt Home Portfolio Txn Management Order Mgmt Tools Reports My Workspace Logout

Order Mgmt > Equity > Order Capture

Customer No: 1016 Customer Name: Tulika Verma

Portfolio Name: Self Managed

**Security Details**

Security Name: Equity Test 99

Security Code: EQTest99

Instrument Currency: INR

Last Traded Price: 10

Exchange:

Custody Fee (%):

Settlement Currency: INR

Security Sub Type: Equity

Holding Quantity:

**Order Details**

Settlement Date:

Transaction: Buy

Quantity:

Order Type: Market Order

Time Condition: Timed Order

Disclosed Quantity:

Trigger Price: 10

Expiry Date: 01/02/2013

Transaction fee (including taxes and surcharge):

Amount:

Broker Commission:

Security Fee:

Total Amount:

Description:

**Account Details**

DP ID-Client ID: ASD-475

Bank Account: 10003-INR

Submit Clear

This application is best viewed at 1024x768 resolution with Internet Explorer 6.x or Firefox 3.x browser.

FLEXCUBE - PRIVATE BANKING - Equity Local intranet

**Figure 5.1: Equity Order Capture Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

Entry to the screen:

### **Option 1**

Select the “Order Management” option on the main menu

→ Equity → Order capture

## **Rules for Commencement of an Order:**

- Orders can be placed only for customers in active status.
- For initiating an order the customer should have either a portfolio coupled to his id.
- The electronic trading account identification of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.
- Similar to the electronic account information the customer also needs to include the particulars of his bank account in the FCPB prior to order initiation.


## **Procedure for placing of an Order:**


**Step 1:**

If the Income Tax ID Required and Risk Profiler Mandatory options are set to Yes in the Instrument Type screen of Admin login and the corresponding details for the selected customers are not updated, then the system displays the appropriate messages and will not allow the user to place the order.


The 'Portfolio Name' is the first field displayed in the Order Capture screen. The dropdown list should have all the portfolio names of portfolio type based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'


**Step 2:**

Click the  icon next to the Source Code field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Source Code field, the Banker Source Code Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Source Code.


**Step 3:**

Click the  icon next to the Lead Generation Code field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Lead Generation Code field, the Banker Lead Code Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Lead Generation Code.

**Step 4:**

The subsequent step is to capture the security details. For placing the order, the user has to select the security and the exchange in which he wants to transact.

The user can select the security by using  icon as explained in general characteristics section.

"The security search screen displays only the securities which are in active status. If the recommended list is getting deviated the system displays the error message as "The selected instrument is not recommended for risk profile. Do you want to proceed?"



If there is a model portfolio defined for the risk model and if the Instrument selected is outside the model portfolio of the client, the system displays an error message as “This instrument is outside the Model Portfolio, do you wish to continue ? Yes / No”.

If you click on ‘Yes’ button, then you are allowed to tab out and continue with the order.

"

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

On picking a security through the search screen, the security name and currency get displayed in the subsequent ‘Security Name’, ‘Currency’, ‘Settlement Currency’, ‘Last Traded Price’, ‘Security Sub Type’, ‘Holding Quantity’ and Custody Fee fields in the order screen.

#### **Step 5:**

A company may have its stock listed on more than one exchange. Hence on selecting the security all the exchanges in which the security is listed are displayed in the drop down list. The user has to decide on the exchange before proceeding with entering the order particulars. The information of the exchanges in which the security is listed is updated by the administrator in the Instrument Exchange reference table.

#### **Step 6:**

Select the appropriate Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

If the Settlement Date falls on the currency holiday then the system gives the appropriate error messages and auto-rollover the date to next valid business date while for system and exchange holidays the system gives the appropriate warning messages enabling the user to proceed further.



The system validates Order Capture screens of all Instrument types for Trade and Settlement Dates and displays the appropriate messages.

#### **Step 7:**

The primary step in initiating an order is to opt for a type of transaction. The user can place either the bid/ask (buy/sell) order. While there is no restriction on the buy transaction, the sell transaction is restricted to the extent of balance quantity available for the security in the portfolio of the selected customer.

For multiple sale orders initiated on the same business day for a particular security within a portfolio for a customer under consideration, the balance quantity is construed by considering both the current holding of the customer as well as the quantities against the orders which are in open status (All the orders initiated by the users are said to be in ‘open’ status till the moment, they are transformed into any other status. The different order statuses are discussed in the next section)

**For Example:**

- Total Holding = 1000 shares  
Sale Transaction  
Ordered = 100  
Executed = 10  
Holding =  $1000 - 10 = 990$   
Balance qty available for initiating sale = Holding – open qty =  $990 - 90 = 900$
- Total Holding = 1000 shares  
Sale Transaction  
Ordered = 100  
Executed = 10  
Cancelled = 90  
Holding =  $1000 - 10 = 990$   
There are no orders in open status and hence the entire 990 is available to the user to initiate a sale transaction.

**Step 8:**

FCPB allows users to enter orders with various conditions attached to them as per their requirements. The conditions are broadly divided into Time conditions, quantity conditions and price conditions. Several combinations of the above are allowed thereby providing flexibility to users. The price conditions provided as a drop down list in the 'order type' field are summarized below:

- Market Order: Market orders are orders for which price is specified as 'Mkt' at the time order is entered. For such orders the trading system determines the price and hence the price field gets disabled on selection of this option. The screen displays this type of order as default order.



For Market Order, the system should default the Time Condition field to GTC.

- Stop Loss: This facility allows the user to release an order into the system after the market of the security reaches or crosses a threshold price called the trigger price. On opting for the stop loss condition, the user has to enter both the trigger price in the 'Trigger Price' field and as well as the price in the 'Price' field. If the price is not specified, the trigger price is taken as the price for the order. The trigger price and the price mentioned should be in multiples of the tick size for that particular security and within the day's minimum/maximum price range.

A sell order in the stop loss book gets triggered when the last traded price in the market reaches or falls below the trigger price of the order. On the other hand, the buy order in the Stop Loss book gets triggered when the last traded price in the normal market reaches or exceeds the trigger price of the order.

Example: If for stop loss buy order, the trigger price is Rs.93.00, the price is Rs.95.00 and the market (last traded) price is Rs.90.00, then this order is released into the system once the market price reaches or exceeds Rs.93.00.

- Limit Order: On opting for this option, the user has the flexibility to enter any desired price. If a user mentions a price, it should be in multiples of the tick size for that particular security and within the day's minimum/maximum price range.



For Limit Order also the system should default the Time Condition field to GTC.

- IPO: If the system date is in the range of the selected instrument's 'New Issue Start Date' and 'New Issue End Date', then the instrument qualifies as an IPO.

Once the instrument selected is classified as an IPO,

- Transaction should be defaulted to BUY
- Order Type should be defaulted to IPO
- Time condition should be defaulted to GTC
- All the above fields should be disabled.

If the issue start and end date is null or if the issue end date is less than the current system date for the selected instrument then the user should not be allowed to place an Order Type IPO and it should display an error message as 'Selected instrument is not available for IPO subscription.

#### **Step 9:**

After selecting the 'Order Type', the user proceeds to enter the quantity for the transaction. Quantity mentioned should be in multiples of regular lot size for that security. To recap, for a sell transaction, the user will be restricted to the extent of balance quantity available in the security.

If the selected instrument does not follow the Model asset allocation for the customer, the system displays the message as 'Model asset allocation is deviated. Do you want to proceed?' The user can click the OK button to continue.

If no risk score is defined for the customer then there will not be any model asset allocation and hence system will not display any message.

#### **Step 10:**

Depending on the type of order selected the price field will be enabled or disabled. To summarize what we discussed, the price field will be enabled only for the Limit price and Stop Loss type of order. For the Limit price order the user can overwrite the market price with any other desired price and in case of stop loss orders, a user has the flexibility of specifying a limit price along with the trigger price. The price should be quoted in multiples of the tick size.

#### **Step 11:**

To reiterate, FCPB provides users with the flexibility of placing orders with Quantity conditions. An order with the Disclosed quantity order condition allows the user to disclose only a portion of the order quantity to the market.

#### **For e.g.:**

Order quantity = 10000

Disclosed quantity = 2000

Only 2000 are disclosed to the market.

The disclosed quantity should be less than equal to the order quantity. After this quantity is fully matched, a subsequent quantity of 2,000 is disclosed.

#### **Step 12:**

The trigger price field will be enabled on selection of the Stop Loss order. It is mandatory for the user to enter a value in this field, on selection of the stop limit price condition.

#### **Step 13:**

The user can set either of the following time conditions for his order. On accessing the screen, the field defaults to the Timed Order condition:

- **Timed Order:** If the order is time bound, user needs to enter the date on which the order should expire. By default, system considers the system date or current business date whichever is later as the order expiry date. On the date of order expiry, the system lapses the Active Timed Order. In this case, the expiry date has to be a valid business date i.e. the user needs to check for holiday master for System, Exchange or Currency holiday. In case, the expiry date falls on any of the holidays, the system displays an error message on the screen and next valid business date for order processing is displayed on the screen.
- **IOC:** An immediate or cancel order allows the user to buy or sell a security as soon as the order is initiated, failing which the order will be cancelled by the broker's (trading) system. Partial match is possible for the order, and the unmatched portion of the order will be cancelled immediately by the broker system.

#### **Step 14:**

The final step before submitting the order is to decide on the trading account details displayed in the drop down lists. These lists are displayed in the corresponding fields of the 'account details' section. The user needs to pick the DP Id, and the bank account number from the list of values displayed in the dropdown of the corresponding fields.



The Bank Accounts drop-down list displays the bank accounts concatenated with the corresponding bank currency.

If the instrument currency, settlement currency and bank account currency are different and post FX rate conversion if the bank account does not have sufficient funds to process the order, the system displays an appropriate error message on submission of the order.




If the selected portfolio is of type Discretionary, the system defaults the Bank Account drop-down list to the bank account no. attached to it at the time of portfolio creation.



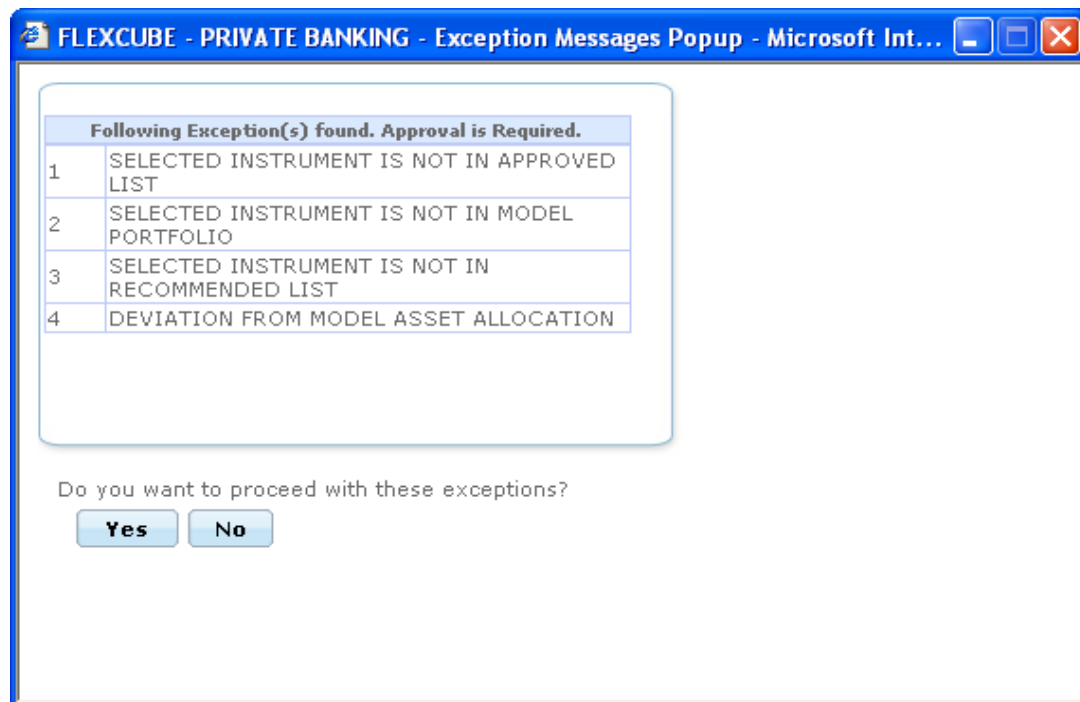
FCPB assumes that the trading account utilized for transacting through FCPB would not be employed by the customer to make any transactions outside the FCPB system.

### Step 15:

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the Submit  button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation
- Trigger Price more/less than 'x%' of the LTP (where 'x' is the no. which is configurable)
- Bank A/C CCY and Settlement CCY are different.
- Not enough balance to place the order.
- Instrument Restriction for client country of domicile



**Figure 5.2: Equity – Exception Popup Window**

If the user clicks 'Yes', the order goes for exception approval.

In case any exception having exception level '99999', the system displays the hard error. Hence the user will not be able to place the order.



Customers can self approve all the exceptions that occur by just clicking Yes as an answer to the question – ‘Do you want to proceed with these exceptions?’ - on the exception pop up. .

The customer can self approve all the exceptions that occur in the order capture if the error levels are not ‘99999’

## **5.2.2 Transaction Processing for Equity**

Please note that transaction capture and processing feature would be available to the bank only if the bank’s license entitles them to Traded Securities module.

### **Equity Transaction Processing**

#### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the equity holdings for the available portfolios created either by the customer or by the RM.

## **Screen:**

**Figure 5.3: Equity Transaction Capture Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system select Transaction Management → Transaction Management → Equity

## **Rules for Commencement of a Transaction:**

- Transactions can be updated only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a transaction the customer should have atleast one of the portfolios RM Managed, Self Managed or Heldaway Portfolio coupled to his ID. The user can capture Equity holdings for the selected portfolio."

## **Procedure for Placing of a Transaction:**

### **Step 1:**


The Customer No and Customer Name fields are display only fields


### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.


### **Step 3:**

The subsequent step is to capture the security details.

The user can select the security details by directly searching for the security. The security search  button, displayed adjacent to the Security Name field, enables to search for the required security.

 The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status.

On picking a security through the search screen, the security name, instrument currency and settlement currency will be displayed in 'Security Name' and 'Instrument Currency', and 'Settlement Currency' fields respectively.

 The user can capture the purchases made through either an IPO offer in the primary market or purchases made in the secondary market.

#### **Step 4:**


The next step in capturing the transaction is to opt for a type of transaction. The user can place the buy/sell/Asset Transfer In and Asset Transfer Out transactions through this screen.

The Asset Transfer In (ATI) type of transaction allows the customer to transfer the securities to current wealth management system and reflect the holding in the active portfolio. On the other hand, Asset Transfer Out (ATO) enables the user to transfer the securities from current active portfolio to the desired depository. The ATI transaction is considered as Buy transaction whereas the ATO transaction is considered as Sell transaction.

#### **Step 5:**


The user also needs to select the appropriate settlement type from the Settlement Type drop--down list. For Buy transactions, the system displays the settlement types as Receipt Free and Receipt Against Payment. For Sell transactions the settlement types are Delivery Free and Delivery versus Payment.

#### **Step 6:**

The user then proceeds to capture the transaction date. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Transaction Date' field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

As these transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions.

However in case of a sell transaction, the user is restricted from capturing the date of transaction as prior to the first purchase transaction date of the security.

 In case of back-dated transactions FCPB considers the FX rate based on transaction date and not the latest FX rate.



The system puts an additional check on the user from capturing a future transaction date.

**Step 7:**

Once the transaction date is entered, the user can enter the Settlement Date.

**Step 8:**

In the next step the user has to capture the quantity of holding. While there is no restriction on updating the information on a buy transaction, the sell transaction is restricted to the extent of balance quantity available for the security in the portfolio of the selected customer.

Please note that though these transactions are being captured for the holdings in a Held Away portfolio, all the holdings in the same equity security held in the same portfolio of a customer will be consolidated.

**Step 9:**

The next significant step is to capture the net purchase price of the holding. Please note that it is this price which will be considered for the purpose of analysis and performance computation and hence it is the responsibility of the user to enter the accurate value. This field too is mandatory for entry by the user.

Once the Quantity and Price is entered, the system calculates the total amount and displays it in the Amount field.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate transaction fee in the Fees text box.

**Step 11:**

This field indicates the brokerage charged for the transaction. The calculation is done by the broker master.

Enter the appropriate broker commission in the Broker Commission text box, if any. **Step 12:**

The next field has been provided to capture the tax and other charges paid for obtaining the holding. Please note currently, these fields are currently not being utilized for any of the valuation, analysis or performance computations.



If the Price to be adjusted field in Bank Parameters is set to Y then the fee, tax and brokerage on the transaction is adjusted in the price, hence the Original price and Original Amount field shows different values from Price and Amount. If it is set to N, Original price and Original Amount fields remains same as Amount and Price respectively.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate fee in the Security Fee text box, if any. "

**Step 14:**

Enter the rate in the Exchange Rate text box.

This field is enabled only if the instrument and settlement currency is different else it is defaulted with value 1.

**Step 15:**

Enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.

The user is allowed to enter the details upto 250 characters. If the entered details exceed 250 characters, system displays the message as 'Description cannot exceed 250 characters'.

**Step 16:**

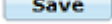
Select the appropriate account from the Security Account drop-down list.

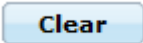


The system defaults the account no. based on the flags selected at Instrument Type level. If the Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Security Account field.

**Step 17:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, you can proceed

to click on the save  button. On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If the user changes your decision on updating the holding, he/she has the option to clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

## 5.3 **Mutual Funds Order Management**

### 5.3.1 **Order Management for Mutual Funds**



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Mutual Funds' instrument type, but whether Mutual Fund order management UI and processing feature would be available to the bank or not, depends on whether the bank's license entitles them to the 'Mutual Funds and Insurance' Module and Order management module for 'Mutual Fund' instrument type.

#### **Description:**

A mutual fund is just the connecting bridge or a financial intermediary that allows a group of investors to pool their money together with a predetermined investment objective. The mutual fund has a fund manager who is responsible for investing the gathered money into specific securities (stocks or bonds). When you invest in a mutual fund, you are buying units or portions of the mutual fund and thus on investing becomes a shareholder or unit holder of the fund.

### **Mutual Fund Order Capture - Subscription**

#### **User Access Levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## Screen:

Order Mgmt > MF > Order Capture

Customer No. : 1015 Customer Name : Tulika Verma

Subscribe Redeem Transfer

Portfolio Name: Self Managed

**Fund Details**

Scheme Name: [Text Field] [Icons]

Security Code: [Text Field]

Instrument Currency: [Text Field] Settlement Currency: [Text Field]

Last Traded Price: [Text Field] Security Sub Type: [Text Field]

Option: [Text Field] Select

Holding Quantity: [Text Field]

Exchange: OTC

**Subscription Details**

Settlement Date: [Text Field]

Account Type: Demat Payment Option: Regular SIP

Folio/Account No.: MF-12345

Amount: [Text Field]

Invested Amount: [Text Field]

Transaction Fees(Including Taxes & Surcharges): [Text Field] Total Amount: [Text Field]

Description: [Text Field]

**Payment Details**

Payment Method: Account

Bank Account No: 10003-INR

☐ I have read, understood and agree to abide by the contents of [Key Information Memorandum](#) and other details of the mutual fund scheme including all applicable disclaimers and Terms and Conditions for On-Line Mutual Fund Transactions.

☐ I have been provided with complete information on all the [competing schemes](#) and the [commission received thereon by the Bank](#)

**Note:**

- This transaction cannot be reversed once you confirm it. Also, in case of 'Subscribe', please note that your savings account with us would be debited for the total amount instantly on confirmation.
- Please note that NAV for all funds displayed is indicative and as at the close of previous business day. Cut-off time for online subscription orders - For orders placed for Equity and Debt funds before 2 pm, same day NAV is applicable. For orders placed for Liquid funds before 1115am, closing NAV of the previous business day is applicable.

Submit Clear

Please refer to the Disclaimer

Note: Please enter the details of transactions accurately. The Bank ("The Bank") shall not be responsible for any incorrect entry of data, errors or omissions by the customers. The above transactions are voluntarily entered by the customer. The Bank acts merely as a distributor and

This application is best viewed at 1024x768 resolution with Internet Explorer 6.x or Firefox 3.x browser.

**Figure 5.4: Mutual Fund Order Capture – Subscription Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

Entry to the screen:

### **Option 1**

1. Select the "Order Management" option on the main menu

→ Mutual Fund

The screen will default the subscription tab

### **Rules for commencement of an Order:**

The rules for placing the Mutual Fund order are comparable to those stated for equity

- Orders can be placed only for customers in active status.
- For initiating an order the customer should have portfolio coupled to his/her id.

- The bank account information of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.

## **Procedure for Placing of an Order:**


### **Step 1:**

If the Income Tax ID Required and Risk Profiler Mandatory options are set to Yes in the Instrument Type screen of Admin login and the corresponding details for the selected customers are not updated, then the system displays the appropriate messages and will not allow the user to place the order.

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' drop-down list defaults to the default portfolio of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

### **Step 2:**

The subsequent step is to capture the fund-scheme details.

For placing the order, the user has to select the fund-scheme to transact. The user can select the fund-scheme either by directly entering the name of the fund-scheme or by searching for the fund-scheme by clicking the  button.



The fund-scheme search screen displays only the schemes which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views, NFO details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

Once the Scheme name is selected, the system populates the Security Code which is the alternate id of the selected instrument, Security Sub Type fields.

### **Step 3:**

Mutual fund generally offers two options on dividend: payout and reinvestment. In the dividend payout option, the dividend is given to the investor from time to time whereas in the reinvest option, all the dividends declared by the fund are ploughed back into the scheme.

The next field 'Dividend' provides the user with the option to select either of the options Dividend payout or Dividend reinvest. Please note that it is not essential that all the fund-schemes provide with both the options on dividend. The options will be made available to the user to select, based on the alternatives offered under a particular fund-scheme. These options are maintained in the system in the MF Instrument Master table in the database.

**Step 4:**

The next field enables the user to select the appropriate exchange name from Exchange drop-down list.

**Step 5:**

Select the appropriate Trade Date and Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

In case if the user is initiating the order (SIP/SWP/STP) post cut off time, the system does not allow the user to place the order and displays an appropriate warning message asking the user to place the order for some other date.

This is applicable only if the commencement date is same as the system date and the cut off time for that Instrument/IAG is less than the current time. Also the validation is applicable only for first order.

**Step 6:**

From the Account Type drop-down list, select the appropriate account. The account types available are Demat and Non-Demat.

The system defaults the Account Type based on the Flags selected at Instrument Type level. If Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Folio No. field.

If Non Demat option is selected than system displays the existing Folio No. in the drop-down or provides an additional text box next to account number drop-down field to enter a new folio number/account number.

**Step 7:**

There are two ways in which you can invest in a mutual fund.

**A one-time outright payment (Regular):** In this type of investment the user just hands over the entire amount and get the fund units depending on the value of the units on that particular day.

**Periodic investments or this is also referred to as a SIP:** is a periodic investment in a mutual fund. At every frequency, the user will have to commit to put in a fixed amount/ purchasing certain units.


FCPB offers the users with the flexibility to invest in both the payment options. These options are provided as radio buttons next to the field 'Payment Option'.

## Step 8:


After you place an investment order in any Mutual Fund, the fund house generates a folio number for that particular fund. The folio number generated by the Fund house is analogous to a Customer Id, and is generally generated for every unique combination of name and date of birth. However there is a great disparity in the approach adopted by the various fund houses in the industry. While some fund houses are inclined to map all the additional investments of the customer into the same folio number in spite of the customer not declaring the folio number in his future applications. Others tend to generate a new folio number for every application without the folio number mentioned in it.


Apart from this there is also an inconsistency in the levels at which the folio numbers are issued. While some fund houses issue separate folio number for every Fund-scheme combination, others issue a new folio number for every fund-scheme-option combination.


FCPB provides its users the option to choose the existing folios numbers within the fund. On picking a fund-scheme through the search screen, all the existing folio number/s affiliated to the fund-scheme in the portfolio of the selected customer are displayed in the 'Folio No' dropdown field. The user has the option either to select any of the existing folio number for making additional purchase or proceed to make a purchase exclusive of any of the existing folio numbers. For first time purchase, the dropdown will not have any values in it.


 If the flag 'Folio at Issuer Level' is maintained as Y at an Instrument Issuer level, then FCPB system also checks if there are any holdings across the portfolios (excluding held away) where the issuer is same as the issuer of the selected instrument. If so, then it displays the existing folios in the drop-down list to select the one from it and in addition also provides the option to select the new folio using the select option of the drop-down list. Hence the user can choose either the existing folio or invest in a new folio.

If there are multiple folio's available for the same issuer; then the system defaults the folio to the omnibus (if applicable and depending on the Omnibus /client level flag) else defaults it to the first available folio.

 Every order initiated through the FCPB will have a unique transaction id associated to it. The id would be generated for every customer-portfolio-order combination. FCPB assumes that this identification would be a common interfacing attribute between the external system and the FCPB.

 FCPB assumes that the fund house would generate a separate folio number for every customer-portfolio combination. Hence investments made by the same customer into the same fund but in different portfolios would be issued with two separate folio numbers by the fund house.

 The FCPB would update the folio number, as received from the fund house, against each order id. Hence multiple orders, associated with the same folio number would be clubbed by FCPB to display the net outcome.

 FCPB assumes that the folio number attained for a holding in the FCPB would not be utilized by the customer to make any transactions outside the FCPB system.

On selecting the fund –scheme name the currency and the current NAV of the scheme will be displayed in the corresponding 'Currency' and 'NAV' fields in the order screen.

#### **Step 9:**

The next field is the amount field. If the payment option is selected as Regular, the system validates the amount with the minimum – maximum subscription limit rule established for the particular fund-scheme. These subscription limits are maintained by the administrator in the MF Instrument Master table in the database.

Once the user enters the amount, the system populates the data in the following fields as per the Fee structure set up for the Client Segment and IAG combination.

- Indicative Total Investment – For Regular payment option, the values for Amount and Indicative Total Investment are same but for SIP, the Indicative Total Investment is obtained by multiplying the value in the Amount field with no. of transfers. The system validates the amount entered here against the amount set up in the Maximum Amount for Buy field of Product Master, if any. If it is greater than the value set up at product master, system displays an appropriate error message.  
  
In case of SIP order, the system validates the amount entered in the Invested Amount field against the amount set up in the Maximum Amount field of SIP Details pop up of Product Master. If it is greater than the value set up in the Product Master, system displays an appropriate error message.
- Transaction fee (including taxes and surcharge) – The value in this field is displayed based on the Fee structure set up for given Client Segment and IAG.
- Total Amount – It displays the amount obtained by adding Indicative Total Investment and Transaction fee. If no fee is applicable the amount in this field is same as Total Indicative Investment.

If the selected instrument does not follow the Model asset allocation for the customer, the system displays the message as 'Model asset allocation is deviated. Do you want to proceed?' The user can click the OK button to continue.

If no risk score is defined for the customer then there will not be any model asset allocation and hence system will not display any message.

#### **Step 10:**

The subsequent field, 'Frequency' gets enabled only for SIP payments. The user needs to select the frequency (monthly / quarterly / semi-annually) from the drop down list provided.

Let's say that the user has opted for a fund A with an investment amount of \$500 with monthly frequency, subsequently the effective monthly investment would be \$500.

#### **Step 11:**

Similar to the 'Frequency' field, the next field 'Commencement Date' also gets enabled only for SIP payments. The commencement date is a pre-determined date on which the SIP instruction would be executed by the fund house at a frequency defined by the user.



If the Frequency is selected as Weekly in SIP pop-up of Product Master with few days mentioned in the select-box and if the Investment Dates have not been specified, then while placing the order, if the user selects the date/month or year which does not fall on the one of the specified days of Product Master then system display an appropriate an error message. Similarly, an error message will be displayed if the selected date does not fall on the Investments dates specified in the Product Master. Both the frequency and Commencement date are mandatory fields to be captured by the user on opting for SIP payment. Also, based on the Commencement date and No. of transfers, the system auto-populates the SIP End Date.

The user will be restricted from initiating an SIP instruction for a date earlier than the current business date.

Please note that once the instruction is initiated by the user, the fund house does not require any further instructions from the user to execute the forthcoming SIP instructions. However, FCPB would receive updates on the revised quantity of units from the fund house after execution of every SIP instruction.

#### **Step 12:**

There should be a gap of one month for the auto generation of orders for SIPs to start. This is based on the requirement from most of the AMCs that there should be a gap of a particular number of working days before the SIP auto debit starts. The number of days differ from AMC to AMC. For example, if a customer wants to enroll for an SIP on 10th of every month, for Rs. 1000 per month for 6 months. He/she books the order on the 20th of January. His/her first order goes through on the 20th Jan but since gap between 20 Jan and 10th Feb. (the date on which the auto generation of orders should have started) is not one month, FCPB skips auto generation of order for 10th Feb, and the auto generation will start from 10th March.


#### **Step 13:**

The user then finally proceeds to capture the bank details. This provides information as to which bank account the amount will get debited from.

#### **Step 14:**

The system also facilitates the user to attach the Transaction Slip. To attach, click on the Browse button and attach the appropriate Transaction slip.

#### **Step 15:**


After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the  button.

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, system displays the Exception displays pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation

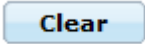
- KYC is not verified


The orders placed by the customer are self approved by the customer.

 If the order is to be placed in the minor's investment account, the system first checks if the 'KYC Check for Signatories' and if it maintained as 'Y', the guardian KYC check is mandatory for placing the order. Here, if the user tries to place the order and if the guardian KYC is not done, the system does not allow the user to place the order and displays an appropriate exception message. If the flag is maintained as 'N' then KYC check for Signatories is not required.

If the order is to be placed in a portfolio where there are joint holders, the system first checks if the 'KYC Check for Joint Holder' is maintained as 'Y', then the Joint Holder KYC check is mandatory for placing the order. Here, if the user tries to place the order and if KYC check of any or all joint holders is not done, the system does not allow the user to place the order and displays an appropriate exception message. If the flag is maintained as 'N' then KYC check for Joint Holder is not required.

If the order is placed successfully, the system displays the message as "Order placed successfully."

If the user changes the decision on the order, he/she can clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

 **The above screen explains the fields gets displayed for payment option as 'Regular'. If payment option is selected as 'SIP', then the additional fields like Frequency, No. of Transfers, Commencement Date, SIP End Date and Total Indicative Amount gets displayed.**  
**Mutual Fund Order Capture - Redemption**

### **User Access Levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## Screen:

The screenshot displays the 'Oracle Mutual Fund Order Capture - Redemption Screen'. The interface is divided into several sections for data entry:

- Fund Details:** Includes fields for Portfolio Name (Self Managed), Scheme Name (dropdown), Security Code, Instrument Currency, Last Traded Price, Folio/Account No. (dropdown), Holding Quantity, Option, and Exchange (OTC).
- To:** Similar fields for the destination scheme, including Scheme Name, Security Code, Instrument Currency, Last Traded Price, Option, and Exchange.
- Order Details:** Includes Settlement Date, Transfer Option (Switch or Systematic Transfer), Account Type (Demat), Folio/Account No. (HP-12345), Transaction Fees (including Taxes & Surcharges), and Total Amount.
- Payment Details:** Includes Bank Account No. (10003) and a Description field.

At the bottom, there are checkboxes for terms and conditions, a note section, and a disclaimer.

**Figure 5.5: Mutual Fund Order Capture – Redemption Screen**

### Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system, select Order Management → Mutual Fund → Redemption

The screen will however default the subscription tab

### Rules for Commencement of Redemption:

- Redemption orders can be placed only for customers in active status.
- The bank account information of the customer is mandatory for initiating a redemption order.

### Procedure for Placing of a Redemption Order:

Though most of the fields for redemption are analogous to subscription, for simplicity, the particulars of the fields have been repeated again in this section.

**Step 1:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' drop-down list defaults to the default portfolio of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

**Step 2:**

The subsequent step is to select the fund –schemes.

For placing the order, the user has to select the fund-scheme in which he wants to transact from the Scheme Name drop-down list.



The fund-scheme drop-down displays only the schemes which are in open status.

**Step 3:**

On picking a fund-scheme through the search screen, all the existing folio number/s affiliated to the fund-scheme in the portfolio of the selected customer will be displayed in the 'Folio No' dropdown field. Please note only the folio's in which the customer currently has holdings will be displayed in the drop down list. It is obligatory for the user to select one of the folio numbers displayed in the list.



Every order initiated through the FCPB will have a unique transaction id associated to it. The id would be generated for every customer-portfolio-order combination. FCPB assumes that this identification would be a common interfacing attribute between the external system and the FCPB.

On selecting the fund –scheme and the folio number, the currency, the current NAV and the dividend option of the scheme will be displayed in the corresponding 'Currency', 'NAV', 'Counterparty' and 'Dividend' fields in the order screen.

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate Trade Date and Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 5:**

The next field has a radio button adjacent to it. The user has the option to opt between units and amount to redeem. Thus the user has the alternative either to redeem an amount or redeem certain units.

For either of the options, the system validates against the balance number of units or the value of the balance units available in the folio. The value of the units is determined by considering the latest NAV available for the particular fund-scheme.

For multiple redemption orders initiated on the same business day, for the same fund-scheme-folio number in a customer's portfolio, the balance qty is validated by netting the current holding of the customer against the quantities in open status. (All the orders initiated by the users are said to be in 'open' status till the moment, they are transformed into any other status. The different order statuses are discussed in the next section)

**For E.g.:**

Total Holding = 1000 units

Redemption Order

units = 100

Status = Open

Balance qty available for initiating sale = Holding – open qty = 1000 – 100 = 900

If the Amount option is selected and if the 'Close the Account' flag is set to 'N', the system validates the amount with the maximum redemption limit rule established if any for the particular fund-scheme. These redemption limits are maintained by the administrator in the Product Master.

If 'Close the Account' flag is 'Y' then the system does not validate the amount with the maximum redemption limit rule.

In case of SWP order, if the 'Close the Account' flag is set to 'No' then the system validates the amount with the value entered in Maximum Amount field of SWP Details pop up of Product Master. If the amount entered here is greater than the amount set up in Product Master, system displays an appropriate error message.

Please note the units in mutual fund can encompass up to 4 decimal places.

**Step 6:**

Analogous to subscription, FCPB provides two approaches to redeem the holdings in a fund

A one-time redemption (Regular): In this type the user redeem over your entire holding.

Periodic redemptions or this is also referred to as a SWP: It is a periodic redemption in a mutual fund. At every frequency, the user will have to commit to redeem fixed amount/units. The FCPB also facilitates the user to start a new SWP though he has already STP running in the system.

FCPB offers the user with the flexibility to redeem by both the payment options. These options are provided as dropdown in the field 'Redemption Type'.

**Step 7:**

The subsequent field, 'Frequency' gets enabled only for SWP redemptions. The user needs to select the frequency (monthly / quarterly / semi-annually) from the drop down list provided.

**Step 8:**

Similar to the 'Frequency' field, the next field 'Commencement Date' also gets enabled only for SWP redemptions. The commencement date is a pre-determined date on which the SWP instruction would be executed by the fund house at a frequency defined by the user.


Both the frequency and Commencement date are mandatory fields to be captured by the user on opting for SWP redemption.

The user will be restricted from initiating an SWP instruction for a date earlier than the current business date.

If the Frequency is selected as Weekly in SWP pop-up of Product Master with few days mentioned in the select-box and if the Investment Dates have not been specified, then while placing the order, if the user selects the date/month or year which does not fall on the one of the specified days of Product Master then system display an appropriate an error message. Similarly, an error message will be displayed if the selected date does not fall on the Investments dates specified in the Product Master.

Please note that once the instruction is initiated by the user, the fund house does not require any further instructions from the user to execute the forthcoming SWP instructions. However, FCPB would receive updates on the revised quantity of units from the fund house after execution of every SWP instruction.

The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to the 'Commencement Date'

field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar and select the suitable date. Also, based on the Commencement date and No. of transfers, the system auto-populates the SWP End Date.

**Step 9:**


The next field tenure is also associated only with SWP redemptions and is enabled on selection of the SWP option. It is mandatory for the user to capture data in this field.

**Step 10:**

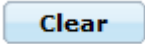
The user then finally proceeds to capture the bank details. This field is a mandatory field for the user. The 'direct credit' account provides the fund house with the information on the bank details for crediting the proceeds of the redemption.

**Step 11:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, you can proceed

to click on the submit  button. On submitting the order you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If you change your decision on the order, you have the option to clear the entire details captured

earlier by clicking on the  button. On the contrary, if you are accessing the order screen through the 'Portfolio Management' menu (navigation - through 'Option 2'), the clear button will clear only the editable fields in the screen.



On submitting the order, the system will validate if the particular fund-scheme is open for redemption. Error message will be displayed on non compliance of the same.



The system does not validate the KYC check for Joint Holder while placing the redemption order.



Existence of restriction instruction for redemption on the particular fund-scheme will curtail the user from initiating a redemption order.



System will display an error message if the user initiates a redemption request for a fund-scheme during its lock –in period.



The above screen explains the fields gets displayed for payment option as 'Regular'. If payment option is selected as 'SWP', then the additional fields like Frequency, No. of Transfers, Commencement Date, SWP End Date and Indicative Total Redemption gets displayed.

## Mutual Fund Order Capture - Transfer

### User Access levels:

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

### Screen:

The screenshot displays the Oracle Financial Services Order Capture - Transfer Screen. The interface is divided into two main sections: 'From' and 'To'. The 'From' section contains fields for Portfolio Name, Scheme Name, Security Code, Instrument Currency, Last Traded Price, Policy/Account No., Holding Quantity, Option, and Exchange. The 'To' section contains fields for Scheme Name, Security Code, Instrument Currency, Last Traded Price, Option, and Exchange. There are also checkboxes for 'Transfer Option' (Switch or Systematic Transfer) and 'Close the Account' (Yes or No). A 'Submit' button is located at the bottom left, and a 'Please refer to the Disclaimer' section is at the bottom right.

**Figure 5.6: Mutual Fund Order Capture – Transfer Screen**

**STOP** The user can also transfer the fund details from one Scheme Name to another Scheme Name by clicking on the Transfer tab. Enter the appropriate details in the From section as well as in the To section and click on the Submit button.

If the Amount option is selected and if the 'Close the Account' flag is set to 'N', then the system validates the amount against the Maximum Amount for Switch-Out maintained at the Product Master, if any for From Fund. These limits are maintained by the administrator in the Product Master.

If 'Close the Account' flag is 'Y' then the system does not validate the amount against the Maximum Amount for Switch-Out maintained at the Product Master.



Also, while placing the STP order, if the 'Close the Account' flag is set to 'No' then the system validates the Amount with the value entered in Maximum Amount field of STP Details pop up of Product Master for From Fund. If the amount entered here is greater than the amount set up in Product Master, system displays an appropriate error message.

In case of STP order, if 'Close the Account' option is set to 'No' and if Units option is selected then the system validates the amount obtained by multiplying quantity with the Latest Trade Price of From Fund with the 'Min Amount of Buy / Min First Purchase Amount for To Fund. For example, if the customer already has holdings in the 'To Fund' and that folio is selected, then the "Min Amount of Buy" of 'To Fund' is validated. However, if the 'To fund' has no holdings then 'Min First Purchase Amount' of 'To Fund' is validated against the amount obtained.



The system validates KYC check for Joint holders while placing the transfer order.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, the system displays the message "MF Order Placed successfully".



The above screen explains the fields gets displayed for payment option as 'Regular'. If payment option is selected as 'STP', then the additional fields like Transfer Frequency, No. of Transfers, Commencement Date, STP End Date and Indicative Total Transfer gets displayed.

### **5.3.2 Transaction processing for Mutual Fund**



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Mutual Funds and Insurance' Module of FCPB.

#### **Mutual Fund Transaction Capture: Subscription**

##### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the Mutual Fund subscription holdings for portfolios created either by the customer or by the RM.



There are no restrictions on the either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

## Screen:

The screenshot displays the 'Subscription' screen within the Oracle Mutual Fund Transaction Capture interface. The form is organized into several sections: 'Fund Details' with fields for Scheme Name, Security Code, Instrument Currency, Last Traded Price, Option, Holding Quantity, and Exchange; 'Subscription Details' with fields for Settlement Date, Account Type, Policy/Account No., Amount, Transaction Fees/Including Taxes & Surcharge, and a Total Amount field; and 'Payment Details' with fields for Payment Method and Bank Account No. There are also checkboxes for terms and conditions and a 'Submit' button. The interface includes a navigation bar at the top with links like 'Home', 'Portfolio', 'Transaction Management', and 'Reports'.

**Figure 5.7: Mutual Fund Transaction Capture – Subscription Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Mutual Fund

The screen will default the Subscription screen.

## Rules for Commencement of a Transaction:

- Transactions can be updated only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a holding the customer should have at least one portfolio coupled to his/her id.

## Procedure for Capturing a Holding:

### Step 1:

The system auto-populates the name, no. and default portfolio name of the customer.




The Customer No and Customer Name fields are driven by the Field Access Controller.

### Step 2:

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order.

### Step 3:

The subsequent step is to capture the fund –scheme details. For capturing the transaction, the user has to select the fund-scheme for which he wants to capture the transaction. The user can select the fund-scheme either by directly entering the name of the fund-scheme or by searching for the fund-scheme by clicking the  button.



The fund-scheme search screen displays only the schemes which are in open status.



The user can capture the subscriptions made through either NFO or continuous offer.

On selecting the fund –scheme name the instrument currency and settlement currency of the scheme will be displayed in the 'Instrument Currency', and 'Settlement Currency' fields respectively.

### Step 4:

Select the appropriate Account Type from the drop-down list.



The Account Type field is driven by the Field Access Controller for Mandatory and Modify actions. The Display option will always be in the disabled mode in FAC for this field. .

### Step 5:

The folio number needs to be entered. If there is an existing folio for the scheme this will be visible as a drop-down in the folio field.



The system defaults the Folio/Account No based on the Flags selected at Instrument Type level. If the Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Folio/Account No. field.



This field is also driven by the Field Access Controller for Mandatory and Modify actions. The Display option will always be in the disabled mode in FAC for this field. .

### Step 6:

The next field 'Dividend' provides the user with the option to select either of the options Dividend payout or Dividend reinvest. Please note that it is not essential that all the fund-schemes provide both the options on dividend. The options will be made available to the user to select, based on the alternatives offered under a particular fund-scheme.

Please note it is obligatory for the user to capture both the folio number and the dividend option.

**Step 7:**

Select the appropriate option from Payment Option drop-down list. The options available are Regular and SIP. The screen will always default to the option 'Regular'.


**Step 8:**

Select the appropriate option for Asset Transfer In.

The user can place Asset Transfer In transactions through this screen. The Asset Transfer In (ATI) type of transaction allows the customer to transfer the securities to current wealth management system and reflect the holding in the active portfolio. By default, No option is selected.

Asset Transfer In transaction is not allowed in Discretionary type portfolios.

**Step 9:**

The user then proceeds to capture the purchase and settlement date. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to respective fields. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

As these transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions.

The system puts an additional check on the user from capturing a future transaction date.

**Step 10:**

In the next step the user needs to capture the units of holding. It is mandatory for the user to capture information in this field.

**Step 11:**

In the next field the user needs to capture the NAV at which the fund-scheme was purchased.

Once the NAV is entered, the system calculates the amount and displays it in the Amount field.

**Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate transaction fee in the Fee text box.

**Step 13:**

The next field Taxes & Surcharges has been provided to capture the tax paid for obtaining the holding.

**Step 14:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty name using the search icon.



If the user enters the Counterparty name, the Counterparty Ref No is a mandatory field else the system gives the error message.

**Step 15:**

Enter the appropriate ref no in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.




If the user enters the Counterparty Ref No, the Counterparty name is a mandatory field else the system gives the error message.

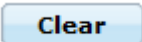
**Step 16:**

Enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.

The user is allowed to enter the details upto 250 characters. If the entered details exceed 250 characters, system displays the message as 'Description cannot exceed 250 characters'.

**Step 17:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the save  button. On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If the user changes the decision on updating the holding, entire details captured earlier can be cleared by clicking on the  button.

**Mutual Fund Transaction Management: Redemption****User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the Mutual Fund redemption transactions for the available portfolios created either by the customer or by the RM.

**STOP** There are no restrictions on the either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

## **Screen:**

**Figure 5.8: Mutual Fund Transaction Capture – Redemption Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Mutual Fund

Click on the Redemption tab

## **Rules for Redemption:**

- Transactions can be updated only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a holding the customer should have at least one portfolio coupled to his/her id and should have previously held holdings in a scheme.

## **Procedure for Redeeming a Holding:**

### **Step 1:**


The system auto-populates the name, no. and default portfolio name of the customer.

**STOP** The Customer No and Customer Name fields are driven by the Field Access Controller.

### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order.

### **Step 3:**

The subsequent step is to capture the fund –scheme details. For capturing the transaction, the user has to select the fund-scheme for which he wants to capture the transaction. The user can select the fund-scheme either by directly entering the name of the fund-scheme or by searching for the fund-scheme by clicking the  button.



The fund-scheme search screen displays only the schemes which are in open status.

On selecting the fund – scheme name the instrument and settlement currencies will be displayed in the 'Instrument Currency' and 'Settlement Currency' fields respectively.

### **Step 4:**

In the next step the user needs to capture the folio number in which the units were redeemed. Please note only the folio's in which the customer currently has holdings will be displayed in the drop down list. It is obligatory for the user to select one of the folio numbers displayed in the list.

On selecting the fund –scheme and the folio number, the dividend option of the scheme will be displayed in the field 'Dividend'.

### **Step 5:**

Select the appropriate option from Redemption Type drop-down list.. The options available are Regular and SWP.

### **Step 6:**

Select the appropriate option for Asset Transfer Out transaction.

The user can place Asset Transfer Out transaction through this screen. Asset Transfer Out (ATO) transaction enables the user to transfer the securities from current active portfolio to the desired depository. By default, No option is selected.

### **Step 7:**


The next field captures the total redemption amount received by the customer on redemption. Please note that it is this price which will be considered as the sale price for the purpose of analysis and performance computation and hence it is the onus of the user to enter the accurate value. This field too is mandatory for entry by the user.

### **Step 8:**

In the next step the user needs to capture the units of redemption. All the holdings in the same fund-scheme held in the same portfolio of a customer will be consolidated. It is mandatory for the user to capture information in this field.

The units captured by the user will be validated by the system against the balance number of units. The units in mutual fund can encompass up to 4 decimal places.

#### **Step 9:**

The user then proceeds to capture the redemption date. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Date of Redemption' field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

As these transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions. The user is restricted from capturing the date of transaction as prior to the first purchase transaction date of the fund-scheme.

The system puts an additional check on the user from capturing a future transaction date.

#### **Step 10:**

In the next field the user needs to capture the NAV at which the fund-scheme was redeemed.

#### **Step 11:**

The next two fields have been provided to capture the exit load and tax paid for redeeming the holding.

Exit load also known as ***Deferred Sales Charge***, is a fee paid when shares are sold. Also known as a "back-end load," this fee typically goes to the brokers that sell the fund's shares. The amount of this type of load will depend on how long the investor holds his/her shares and typically decreases to zero if the investor holds his/her or her shares long enough.

Please note currently, these fields are currently not being utilized for any of the valuation, analysis or performance computations.

#### **Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate transaction fee in the Transaction Fee text box.


#### **Step 13:**

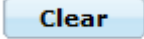
Enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.



The user is allowed to enter the details upto 250 characters. If the entered details exceed 250 characters, system displays the message as 'Description cannot exceed 250 characters'.

**Step 14:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the save  button. On saving the holding the user will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

To clear the entire details captured earlier, click on the  button.

**Mutual Fund Transaction Capture: Transfer**

**User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the Mutual Fund transfer transactions

## Screen:

**Figure 5.9: Mutual Fund Transaction Capture – Transfer Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Mutual Fund

Click on the Transfer tab



The user can also transfer the fund details from one Scheme Name to another Scheme Name by clicking on the Transfer tab. Enter the appropriate details in the From section as well as in the To section and click on the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, the system displays the message “Transaction placed successfully”.

### **5.3.3 MF Sys Plan Cancellation**

#### **User Access levels:**

**Customers** can cancel the Systematic Plan.

## **Screen:**

ORACLE  
FLEXCUBE Investment Banking

25/06/2013 3:59 PM | 25/06/2013 4:13 PM

Order Mgmt > MF > Systematic Plan Cancellation

Systematic Plan Order Filters

Customer No: 1019 Transaction Type: Select

Portfolio Name: Select Scheme Name: Select

Search Clear

View	Folio Id	Scheme Name	Transaction Type	Amount	From Date	To Date	Frequency	Last Paid Date
------	----------	-------------	------------------	--------	-----------	---------	-----------	----------------

Cancel Transaction

**Figure 5.10: MF Sys Plan Cancellation Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging into the system, select Order Management → MF → Systematic Plan Cancellation

### **Procedure for Systematic Plan Cancellation**

#### **Step 1:**

From the Portfolio Name drop-down list, select the appropriate portfolio for the selected customer.

#### **Step 2:**

From the Transaction Type drop-down list, select the appropriate transaction type.

#### **Step 3:**

From the Scheme Name drop-down list, select the appropriate scheme.

#### **Step 4:**

Click the Search button.

Once the user clicks on the Search button, the details of the selected transaction appears.

#### **Step 5:**

Click the Cancel Transaction button.

## 5.4 Bonds

### 5.4.1 Transaction Processing for Bonds



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Traded Securities' Module of FCPB.

#### Description:

A bond is a debt security. When a bond is purchased, the owner of the bond is lending money to a government, municipality, corporation, federal agency or other entity known as the issuer. In return for the loan, the issuer promises to pay the owner a specified rate of interest during the life of the bond and to repay the face value of the bond (the principal) when it "matures," or comes due.

#### Features of bonds

There are a number of key variables to look at when investing in bonds: the bond's maturity, redemption features, credit quality, interest rate, price, yield and tax status

**Nominal, principal or face amount:** the amount over which the issuer pays interest, and which has to be repaid at the end

**Issue price:** the price at which investors buy the bonds when they are first issued. The net proceeds that the issuer receives are calculated as the issue price, less issuance fees, times the nominal amount

**Coupon:** the interest rate that the issuer pays to the bond holders. Usually this rate is fixed throughout the life of the bond. It can also vary with a money market index, or it can be even more exotic. The name coupon originates from the fact that in the past, physical bonds were issued with coupons attached to them. On coupon dates the bond holder would give the coupon to a bank in exchange for the interest payment

**Types of Coupon:** Bonds pay interest that can be fixed, floating or payable at maturity. Most debt securities carry an interest rate that stays fixed until maturity and is a percentage of the face (principal) amount. Typically, investors receive interest payments semiannually. For example, a \$1,000 bond with an 8% interest rate will pay investors \$80 a year, in payments of \$40 every six months. When the bond matures, investors receive the full face amount of the bond—\$1,000.

But some sellers and buyers of debt securities prefer having an interest rate that is adjustable, and more closely tracks prevailing market rates. The interest rate on a **floating—rate** bond is reset periodically in line with changes in a base interest—rate index, such as the rate on Treasury bills. Some bonds have no periodic interest payments. Instead, the investor receives one payment—at maturity—that is equal to the purchase price (principal) plus the total interest earned, compounded semiannually at the (original) interest rate. Known as **zero—coupon** bonds, they are sold at a substantial discount from their face amount. For example, a bond with a face amount of \$20,000 maturing in 20 years might be purchased for about \$5,050. At the end of the 20 years, the investor will receive \$20,000. The difference between \$20,000 and \$5,050 represents the interest, based on an interest rate of 7%, which compounds automatically until the bond matures. If the bond is taxable, the interest is taxed as it accrues, even though it is not paid to the investor before maturity or redemption.

**Maturity:** A bond's maturity refers to the specific future date on which the investor's principal will be repaid. Bond maturities generally range from one day up to 30 years. In some cases, bonds have been issued for terms of up to 100 years. Maturity ranges are often categorized as follows:

- Short—term notes: maturities of up to five years;
- Intermediate notes/bonds: maturities of five to 12 years;
- Long—term bonds: maturities of 12 or more years.

**Credit Ratings:** Major rating agencies include Moody's Investors Service, Standard & Poor's Corporation and Fitch Ratings. Each of the agencies assigns its ratings based on in—depth analysis of the issuer's financial condition and management, economic and debt characteristics, and the specific revenue sources securing the bond. The highest ratings are AAA (S&P and Fitch Ratings) and Aaa (Moody's). Bonds rated in the BBB category or higher are considered investment—grade; securities with ratings in the BB category and below are considered "high yield," or below investment—grade. While experience has shown that a diversified portfolio of high—yield bonds will, over the long run, have only a modest risk of default, it is extremely important to understand that, for any single bond, the high interest rate that generally accompanies a lower rating is a signal or warning of higher risk.

### **Understanding Transaction Management of Bonds:**

To reiterate, our earlier narrative, FCPB assists in maintenance of a full history of executed transactions even for those securities which were not transacted through FCPB. In this section, we will comprehend the transaction management for the Bond holdings.

All the transactions for the instruments defined under the category 'Bonds' can be captured by the user into any of the portfolios. Though the Bond holdings have not been acquired through the FCPB, the consideration for allowing the user to capture his holdings in the RM Managed and Self Managed portfolios is due to the perception that these holdings could have been obtained through any other system within the bank.

FCPB currently supports transaction management for both the traded and non traded bonds. Currently FCPB does not aggregate multiple purchases made into the same holding in a bond in a selected portfolio by a customer. Due to this, any additional purchases need to be captured as separate security-holding or first time purchase.

To recap, for the traded bonds the market price for the holdings will be received as external feed from data vendors whereas for the non traded bonds the bank user needs to manually update the price for each holdings.

For the transactions defined under the instrument type 'Bonds' the user can capture the Buy Sell, Asset Transfer In and Asset Transfer Out transaction related data.

As the transactions for the Bonds have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions. Currently, there is no restriction on the user in sequencing the backdated transactions. The system will automatically sequence the transactions as per the date of execution as entered by the user.

## **Bond Transaction Management – Buy/Sell/Asset Transfer In/Asset Transfer Out**

### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the transactions for his/her available portfolios.



There are no restrictions on either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

## Screen:

**Figure 5.11: Bond Transaction Management Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system select Transaction Management → Bonds

## Rules for Commencement of a Transaction:

- Transactions can be updated only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a holding the customer should have at least one portfolio coupled to his/her id.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No.	Displays the customer no.	
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name	
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Bond Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate bond name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Bond Name field.	Y
Instrument Currency	Displays the instrument currency for the selected bond name. Once the Bond Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency for the selected bond name. Once the Bond Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Acquisition Details</b>		
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction type from the drop-down list. The transaction types available in the drop-down are Buy, Sell, Asset Transfer In and Asset Transfer Out.	Y
Settlement Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate settlement type from the drop-down list. For Buy transactions, the system displays the settlement types as Receipt Free and Receipt Against Payment. For Sell transactions, the settlement types are Delivery Free and Delivery versus Payment.	Y
Transaction Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date using the calendar icon	Y
Settlement Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate settlement date using the calendar icon. The settlement date cannot be less than transaction date, it can go beyond system date but it should be less than the maturity date.	Y
Units	Enables the user to enter the appropriate units for transaction	Y
Nominal Value	Enables the user to enter the nominal value of the bond in the field provided.	Y
Net Trade Price	Enables the user to enter the appropriate net trade price per unit	Y
Amount	Displays the total amount of the transaction	
Interest	Enables the user to select the appropriate option for interest from the drop-down list. If the transaction type is selected as BUY/ATI, default value will be 'Paid'. And if the transaction type is SELL/PUT/ATO, default will be 'Received'.	Y
Fee	Enables the user to enter the transaction fee.	
Commission	Enables the user to enter the appropriate commission.	
Tax & Other Charges	Enables the user to enter the amount paid as transaction tax	
Exchange Rate	Enables the user to enter the appropriate value in the text box if the instrument currency and settlement currency is different.	Y



Field	Description	Mandatory
Cap Factor	Displays the cap factor value for selected instrument	Y
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate counterparty name who executes the transaction.	
Counterparty Ref. No.	Enables the user to enter the Counterparty Ref. No. in the text box provided. This is a reference number usually assigned by the external service provider.	
Description	Enables the user to enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.  It is a free text box and allows the user to enter maximum 250 characters.	
Security Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate Security Account from the drop-down list.	Y

### **Procedure for Capturing a Transaction:**


#### **Step 1:**

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the portfolios.

#### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

#### **Step 3:**

The subsequent step is to select the Bond. The user can select the Bond either by directly entering the name of the bond or by searching for the bond by clicking the  button.



The bond search screen displays only the schemes which are in open status.

On selecting the bond, the currency of the bond will be displayed in the corresponding field 'Instrument Currency' in the screen. The system also displays the Settlement currency, Cap Factor on selection of the scheme.



Please note the system does not aggregate multiple purchases into the holding. Hence any additional purchases need to be captured as separate security-holding or first time purchase.

Next to the Bond Name field, a check box has been provided in order to distinguish traded bonds. The user needs to check the box for all the traded bonds.


#### **Step 4:**

The type of transaction Buy/Sell/Asset Transfer In or Asset Transfer Out needs to be selected from the drop down list.

#### **Step 5:**

The user also needs to select the appropriate settlement type from the Settlement Type drop--down list. For Buy transactions, the system displays the settlement types as Receipt Free and Receipt Against Payment. For Sell transactions the settlement types are Delivery Free and Delivery versus Payment.


#### **Step 6:**

The user then proceeds to capture the purchase details of the holding. The first step in this process is to capture the date of purchase. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Transaction Date' field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

As these transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions. The transactions in these portfolios can be backdated maximum till the customer creation date.

The user is also restricted from capturing a future purchase date.

#### **Step 7:**

The user then proceeds to capture the settlement date. It is obligatory for the user to capture data in this field for all traded bonds. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Settlement Date' field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

The user will be restricted from backdating the settlement date prior to the purchase date.

#### **Step 8:**

The user then needs to enter the nominal value of the bond in the Nominal Value text box.

#### **Step 9:**

The next significant step is to capture the net purchase price per unit of the holding and no. of units. Please note that it is this price which will be considered for the purpose of analysis and performance computation and hence it is the onus of the user to enter the accurate value. This field too is mandatory for entry by the user.

**Step 10:**

The next three fields have been provided to capture the interest, fee, commission and tax paid for obtaining the holding. Also enter the valid Cap Factor.

**Step 11:**

If Instrument Currency and Settlement Currency are different, system displays the appropriate exchange rate in the Exchange Rate text box.

**Step 12:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty Name using the search icon.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate ref no in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.

**Step14:**

Enables the user to enter the transaction details, if any in the Description text box.

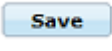
**Step15:**

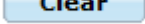
Enables the user to select the appropriate account from the Security Account drop-down list.



The system defaults the Security Account no based on the Flags selected at Instrument Type level. If the Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Security Account field.

**Step 16:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the save  button. On saving the holding, a confirmation message appears on the screen.

To clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

**Bond Transaction Management - Modify****User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can modify the non traded bond holdings for his/her available portfolios.

## Screen:

**FLEXCUBE - PRIVATE BANKING - Bonds Transacti...**

**ORACLE**  
FLEXCUBE Private Banking

User: Alok Nath Current Login: 14/03/2013 2:58 PM Last Login: 14/03/2013 2:58 PM

Order Mgmt Home Portfolio Txn Management Order Mgmt Tools Reports My Workspace Logout

Bonds Transaction Search : Modify

<b>Customer Details</b>	
Customer No.	1007 ⓘ
Customer Name	Alok Nath
Portfolio Name	Heldaway
<b>Instrument Details</b>	
Bond Name	SW Corporate Bond
Instrument Currency	INR
Settlement Currency	INR
<b>Transaction Details</b>	
Transaction	Buy
Transaction Date	10/01/2013 ⓘ
Nominal Value	100000
Net Traded Price(Clean)	120
Commission	2
Exchange Rate	1
Cap Factor	1
Counterparty Name	BROKER ⓘ
Description	
<b>Account Details</b>	
Security Account	1-1285969
Settlement Type	Receipt Free
Settlement Date	10/01/2013 ⓘ
Units	100
Amount	120000
Fee	10
Tax & Other charges	1
Counterparty Ref. No.	122547

Save Clear Delete

***Figure 5.12: Bond Transaction Management Modify Screen***

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system select Transaction Management → Transaction Search. Select the appropriate record and click on the modify hyperlink.



This link will be enabled only for the non traded bonds.

## Procedure for Modifying a Transaction:

### Step 1:

Pre-filled information of the holding is displayed on accessing the screen. The screen will display the name of the customer and the portfolio in which the holding is held. The screen will also display the name of the bond, the currency and the quantity of bond units held. These fields are all non editable.


### Step 2:

The next significant step is to capture the market price per unit of the holding. To recapitulate, it is this value which will be considered for the purpose of analysis and performance computation and hence it is the onus of the user to enter the accurate value. It is obligatory for the user to enter a value in this field.



Please note that it is responsibility of the user to keep revising the market price. The system will use the most recent available value from this field from the purpose of valuation, analysis and performance computation. In the absence of the user providing any data, the system will consider the purchase price as the market price for the above mentioned evaluations.

### Step 3:

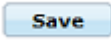
The user then proceeds to capture the valuation date. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'As on Date' field. Click on the icon , in order to open the calendar.

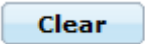
The system validates the date entered against the purchase date. The user will be restricted to the extent of capturing a date before the purchase date. The user is also restricted from capturing a future valuation date.

### Step 4:

The next field 'Market value' is a display field. The market value is computed as the product of the market price and balance units held in the bond.

### Step 5:

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, you can proceed to click on the save  button. On saving the modification you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If you change your decision on the modification, you have the option to clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

## 5.4.2 Order Management for Bonds



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Bonds' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Traded Securities' module and 'Order Management' module.

### **Bonds Order Capture: Buy**

#### **User Access levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## Screen:

**Figure 5.13: Bond Order Capture – Buy Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

Entry to the screen:

### Option 1

Select the “Order Management” option on the main menu

→ Bond → Order capture

### Option 2

Portfolio Management → Maintenance → Select a portfolio (except held away/discretionary) from the list of portfolio → Select bond from the instrument type table → BUY/SELL Options from the screen

## Rules for Commencement of an Order:

The rules for placing the Bonds order are

- Orders can be placed only for customers in active status.
- The bank account information of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.

Field	Description	Mandatory
Customer Details		

Field	Description	Mandatory
Customer No.	Displays the Customer No. of the customer in context. The user can change the customer by clicking on the 'Change Customer' icon.	Based on FAC
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name for the selected Customer No	Based on FAC
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
Source Code	Displays the Source Code for the banker who has sourced the transaction	Based on FAC
Lead Generation Code	Displays the Lead Generation Code for the banker who has provided the lead for the transaction	Based on FAC
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate bond name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument Name field.	Y
Security Code	Displays the Security Code for the instrument	
Instrument Currency	Displays the currency for the selected instrument name. Once the Bond Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency for the selected bond instrument maintained in the bond master.	Y
Security Sub Type	Displays the Security Sub Type for the selected instrument	Based on FAC
Average Clean Buy Price	Displays the average buy price of existing holdings of customer for the selected portfolio, if any. The average price of the instrument displayed is calculated either on FIFO or WAC basis depending on flag selected in Bank Parameters.	Y
Holding Nominal	Displays the nominal value of the holding quantity	Based on FAC
Holding Quantity	Displays the existing holding quantity of the selected bond instrument for the corresponding CPIS.  The field defaults to zero if it is a first order of the selected instrument for the selected customer.	Y
Custody Fee(%)	Displays the Custody Fee as maintained based on the customer or customer segment & IAG	Based on FAC



Field	Description	Mandatory
Last Traded Clean Price	Displays the Last Traded Clean Price. The field defaults to the Original Price as defined in the Price Master table.  It is assumed that Prices are always sent on Percentage basis and therefore the Original Price is the 'unconverted' Percentage Price. If the price is not available in table then the field defaults to the 'Issue Price' of the Instrument as per bond master.	Y
Exchange	Enables the user to select the appropriate exchange	Y
<b>Order Details</b>		
Trade Date	Captures the date on which the trade has happened	
Settlement Date	Displays the Settlement date for the order	
Transaction Type	Displays the order type in the drop-down list, whether Buy or Sell	Y
Nominal Amount	If the bond Quotation Method defined in the bond master is Quantity, then it is a display field and computed as Quantity entered * Face Value of bond from bond master.  If Bond Quotation Method is defined as Nominal then it is an input field. In this case, the derived quantity is a whole number and is expected to adhere to the minimum tradable order quantity as per the Bond master.	Y/N
Quantity	Displays the number of the units of the bond.  If the bond Quotation Method as defined in the bond master is Nominal, this will be a display field and is computed as Nominal Amount entered / Face Value of the bond as per Bond Master.  If Bond Quotation Method is Quantity this is an input field where the Quantity is to be mentioned and is expected to adhere to Minimum tradable Quantity.	Y/N
Order Type	Specifies the Price condition of the order for the selected instrument.	Y
Trigger Price	If user Order Type selected is Limit Order or Stop Loss order, this field is activated to enter the value and it is mandatory field else it is a disabled field and non mandatory. If the user enters the Trigger Price more/less than X % of the LTP, then system displays a warning message.	Y/N

Field	Description	Mandatory
Time Condition	Specifies the validity of order with respect to time. When the Timed order is selected, system populates additional field Expiry Date and enables the user to enter the appropriate date and time.	Y
Expiry Date	This field is enabled only for the Timed Order type and enables the user to enter the expiry date. By default, the system displays the current business date as Expiry Date.	Y
Accrued Days	Displays the No. of days for which accrual has taken place	
Interest	Displays the Accrued interest for the order	
Treasury Price	Enables the user to enter trading desk price.	
Treasury Yield	Displays the Trading Desk Yield for the order.	
Customer Price	Enables the user to enter customer price.	Y
Customer Yield	Displays the Customer's Yield for the order	
Spread	It is computed and shown as Treasury Price - Customer Price for Buy Order & Customer Price - Treasury Price for sell orders.	N
Transaction Fee ( Including Taxes and Surcharge)	The value is defaulted based on the Fee setup done for the IAG, Order Type, Client or Client segment.	Y
Treasury Total Amount	Displays the Treasury Total Amount and is calculated as $[(\text{Treasury Price} \times \text{Quantity} \times \text{Cap Factor} \times \text{Face Value}/100) + (\text{Accrued Interest})]$	Y
Customer Total Amount	Displays the Customer Total Amount and is calculated as $[(\text{Customer Price} \times \text{Quantity} \times \text{Cap Factor} \times \text{Face Value}/100) + (\text{Accrued Interest})] + \text{Transaction Fee}$	Y
Profit (Flat)	Displays the Profit in absolute term and is calculated as Spread Amount + Transaction Fee	
% Profit (Per Year)	Displays the % Profit per year. It is calculated as $(\text{Profit (Flat)}/\text{Nominal Amount}) / \text{Total Term} \times 365$  System uses the corresponding day count convention to calculate Term and no. of days in the year.	
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate counter party details.	Based on FAC


Field	Description	Mandatory
Counterparty Ref No.	Enables the user to select the appropriate counter party ref no.	Based on FAC
Application No	In case of offline bond orders, this field provides a facility to capture the document application number.	N
Description	Enables the user to capture the transaction details for the order.	N
<b>Payment Details</b>		
DP ID – Client ID	<p>Displays the depository trading accounts available for the customer depending on the selected Portfolio Name.</p> <p>If the Order Type is Sell then it displays only those DP Id-Client Ids in drop-down against which a Buy transaction was done for the selected portfolio. If the Allow Omnibus flag is selected as Y at Instrument Type level, the system defaults this drop-down to the Omnibus Account No along with the DP ID – Client ID.</p>	Y
Bank Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate bank account no from the drop-down list	Y
Comments	Enables the user to capture remarks before saving the order details.	Y/N


## Procedure for Placing of an Order:


### Step 1:

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

### Step 2:

Click the  icon next to the Instrument Name field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Bond Name field, Security Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Instrument Name.

 The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name following fields are automatically get populated.

- Security Code
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Security Sub Type
- Holding Nominal
- Holding Quantity
- Average Clean Buy Price
- Custody Fee(%)
- Last Traded Clean Price

If the issue start and end date is null or if the issue end date is less than the current system date for the selected instrument then the user should not be allowed to select an Order Type IPO and it should display an error message as 'Selected instrument is not available for IPO subscription.'

### Step 3:

Select the appropriate Trade Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 5:**

From the Transaction Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

There are two options available for Bonds Order Capture. They are Buy and Sell. By default Buy option is selected.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Nominal Amount text box.



If the bond Quotation Method defined is Quantity, then it is a display only field and computed as Quantity entered \* Face Value of the bond.



Once the user enters the Nominal Amount, the system displays the data in the Quantity, Accrued Days, Interest, Treasury Price, Treasury Yield, Customer Price, Customer Yield, Spread, Profit (Flat) and % Profit (Per Year) fields.



If the spread calculated in the order capture is negative or zero and there is no relevant spread master maintained in the system then the system displays the appropriate error message. This is applicable for Bonds, TD, Commodities, FX and SP instrument types.

**Step 7:**

From the Order Type drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

If the Order Type is selected as Stop Loss or Limit Order, Trigger Price field is enabled and allows the user to enter the appropriate trigger price.


**Step 8:**

From the Time Condition drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

In case of Timed Orders orders, the expiry date has to be a valid business date i.e. the user needs to check for holiday master for System, Exchange or Currency holiday.

In case the expiry date falls on any of the holidays, the system displays an error message on the screen and next valid business date for order processing is displayed on the screen.

**Step 9:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty using the  icon next to the Counterparty Name field.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate no. in the Counterparty Ref No. text box.

**Step 11:**

Enter the description if any in the Description text box.

**Step 12:**

From the DP ID – Client ID drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

**Step 13:**

From the Bank Account No. drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

**Step 14:**

Enter the comments if any in the Comments text box.

**Step 15:**

Click the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation
- Trigger Price more/less than 'x%' of the LTP (where 'x' is the no. which is configurable)
- Spread deviated, approval required.
- 

Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

**Bond Order Capture: Sell****User Access levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## **Screen:**

***Figure 5.14: Bond Order Capture Screen - Sell***

## **Screen Navigation:**

Select the Order Management → Bonds → Bonds Order capture. From the Order Type drop-down list, select the Sell option.

To place the Bonds – Sell transaction follow the same procedure as explained in Bond - Order Capture -Buy above. The only difference here is that the user needs to select the transaction type as Sell from the Transaction Type drop-down list.

The system allows the user to place the Sell transaction only for those instruments for which the customer has holdings.

FCPB also handles Put type of transactions similar to Sell transactions for holdings updation and performance computation.

## **5.5 Insurance**

### **5.5.1 Order Management for Insurance**

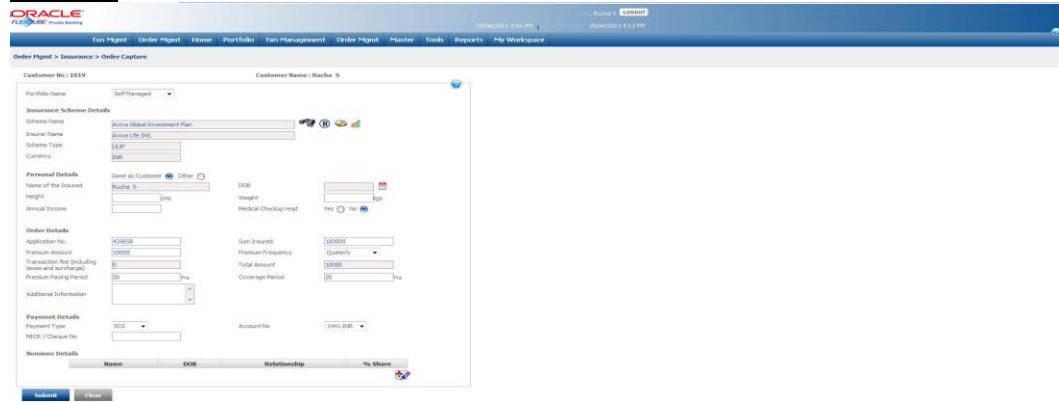
**STOP** Please note order capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Mutual Funds and Insurance' module and 'Order Management' module of FCPB.

## Insurance Order Capture

### User Access levels:

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

### Screen:



**Figure 5.16: Insurance Order Capture Screen**

### Screen Navigation:

After logging into the system, select Order Management → Insurance → Order Capture

### **Rules for Commencement of an Order:**

Insurance orders can be placed only for customers in active status. The rules for placing the Insurance order are

- The bank account information of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No	Enables the user to select the customer by clicking on the search icon available next to the Customer No field	Y
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name for the selected Customer No	Y



Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer in the drop-down list	Y
Source Code	Displays the Source Code for the banker who has sourced the transaction	Y
Lead Generation code	Displays the Lead Generation Code for the banker who has provided the lead for the transaction	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Scheme Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate Scheme Name by clicking on the search icon	Y
Insurer Name	Displays the Insurer Name for the selected scheme name. Once the user selects the Scheme Name, system auto-populates this field.	
Scheme Type	Displays the Scheme Type for the selected Scheme Name. Once the user selects the Scheme Name, system auto-populates this field.	
Currency	Displays the Currency for the selected Scheme Name. Once the user selects the Scheme Name, system auto-populates this field.	
Counterparty	Enables the user to select the appropriate counterparty using the search icon.	
<b>Personal Details</b>		
Same as Customer/Other	Enables the user to select whether the Insured person is customer or some other person. If the Other option is selected, the system allows the user to enter the appropriate details.	
Name of the Insured	If the user selects the Same as Customer option above then system populates the Name of the Insured field. If the Other option is selected, enables the user to enter the appropriate name	Y
DOB	If the user selects the Same as Customer option above then system populates the DOB field. If the Other option is selected, enables the user to enter the appropriate DOB	Y
Height	Enables the user to enter the height in the Height text box	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Weight	Enables the user to enter the weight in the Weight text box	Y
Annual Income	Enables the user to enter the customer annual income in the Annual Income text box.	
Medical Checkup reqd	Enables the user to select the appropriate option for the Medical Checkup reqd field by using the radio button	Y
<b>Order Details</b>		
Application No	Enables the user to enter the Application No	Y
Sum Insured	Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Sum Insured field	Y
Premium Amount	Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Premium Amount field	Y
Premium Frequency	Enables the user to enter the appropriate frequency for the premium amount. The options available are Annually, Monthly, Quarterly, Semi Annually, and Single Premium	Y
Transaction Fee	Displays the total fee applicable if any for the selected customer.	
Total Amount	Displays the user to enter the appropriate total amount	
Premium Paying Period	Enables the user to enter the appropriate premium paying period	Y
Coverage Period	Enables the user to enter the appropriate coverage period	Y
Additional Information	Enables the user to enter the additional information, if any	
<b>Payment Details</b>		
Payment Type	Displays the payment type for selected scheme. The options available are ECS, Cheque, and DD	Y
Account No	Enables the user to enter the appropriate Account No from the drop-down list	Y
MICR/Cheque No	Enables the user to enter the appropriate MICR/Cheque No in the text box	Y
<b>Nominee Details</b>		

Field	Description	Mandatory
Name	Displays the name of the nominee	
DOB	Displays the DOB of nominee	
Relationship	Displays the relationship of nominee with the insured person	
% Share	Displays the % of share allocated to nominee by the insured person	


### Procedure for placing of an Order:


#### Step 1:

If the Income Tax ID Required and Risk Profiler Mandatory options are set to Yes in the Instrument Type screen of Admin login and the corresponding details for the selected customers are not updated, then the system displays the appropriate messages and will not allow the user to place the order.

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

#### Step 2:

Click the  icon next to the Scheme Name field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Scheme Name field, Scheme Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Scheme Name.

Once the user selects the Scheme Name, following fields are populated with the respective data.

- Issuer Name
- Scheme Type
- Currency

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

#### Step 3:

Select the appropriate option for the Personal Details category.

The options available here are same as Customer and Other. If the user selects the same as Customer option, the Name of the Insured and DOB fields populate with the appropriate customer data.

If the user selects the other option, then enters the appropriate data for the Name of the Insured and DOB fields.

**Step 4:**

Enter the appropriate height in the Height text box.

**Step 5:**

Enter the appropriate weight in the Weight text box.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate annual income in the Annual Income text box.

**Step 7:**

Select the appropriate option for the Medical Checkup reqd field.

The options available are Yes or No. By default, the No option is selected.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate application no. in the Application No. text box.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Sum Insured text box.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Premium Amount text box.

**Step 11:**

From the Premium Frequency drop-down list select the appropriate frequency.

The options available here are Annually, Monthly, Quarterly, Semi Annually, Single Premium.

Once the values in Sum Insured, Premium Amount and Premium Frequency fields are entered, system displays the fee applicable for the selected client for that particular instrument in the Transaction Fee text box.

**Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate period in the Premium Paying Period text box.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate period in the Coverage Period text box.



While entering the Coverage Period, remember that it has to be within the minimum and maximum Policy Tenor for the selected instrument. Otherwise, the system gives an error message.

**Step 14:**

Enter the additional information if any, in the Additional Information field.

**Step 15:**

From the Payment Type drop-down list, select the appropriate option.


**Step 16:**

From the Account No. drop-down list, select the appropriate account no.

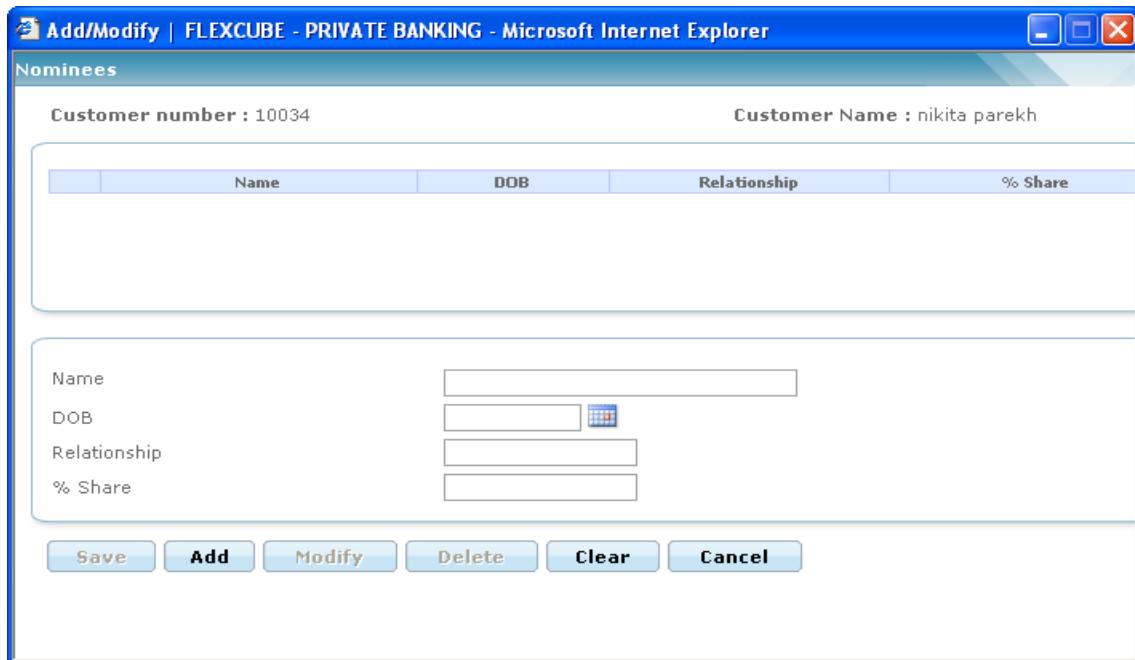
**Step 17:**

Enter the appropriate MICR or Cheque No in the MICR/ Cheque No. text box.

**Step 18:**

To add the nominee details, click the  icon, at the bottom right side of the Nominee Details table.

Once the user clicks on the  icon, the Nominees window appears.



**Figure 5.17: Nominees Window**

Enter the appropriate details and click the Add button.

Click the Save button to close the Nominee window.



Adding nominee details is a mandatory field

#### **Step 19:**

Click the Save button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation
- Insurance Analysis Done is not updated in the system.

Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

## **5.6 Structured Product**

### **5.6.1 Order Management for Structured Products**



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Structured Products' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank, only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Alternative Investments' module and 'Order Management' module.

#### **Structured Products Order Capture - Buy**

##### **User Access :**

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

## Screen:

Order Mgmt > Structured Products > Order Capture

Order capture is disabled for this instrument type for your account.

**Buy**

**Customer Details**

Portfolio Name: Select

**Instrument Details**

Instrument Name:  [View Sheet](#)

Security Code:

Instrument Currency:  Settlement Currency:

Custody Fee:

**Order Details**

Trade Date: 26/06/2013

Account Type: Default

Nominal Amount:

Accrued Date:

Treasury Price:

Customer Price:

Spread (bps):

Treasury Total Amount:

Profit (bps):

Commitment Amount:

Description:

Settlement Date:

Account Number: Select

Accrued Interest:

Treasury Yield:

Customer Yield:

Trade Fee:

Customer Total Amount:

Drawn-down till date Amount:

**Payment Details**

Payment Method: Account

Bank Account No.: Select

Check No.:

Comments:

**Submit** **Clear**

***Figure 5.18: Structured Products Order Capture – Buy Screen***

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system select Order Management → Structured Products. The screen will default to the Buy tab.



### Rules for Commencement of an Order:

The rules for placing the Structure Product order are Orders can be placed only for customers in active status:

- The bank account information of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.
- The Risk Profile Model of the customer should be created before placing an order.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No	Enables the user to select the customer by clicking on the search icon available next to the Customer No field	Based on FAC
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name for the selected Customer No	Based on FAC
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer in the drop-down list	Y
Source Code	Displays the Source Code for the banker who has sourced the transaction	Based on FAC
Lead Generation code	Displays the Lead Generation Code for the banker who has provided the lead for the transaction	Based on FAC
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument Name	Enable the user to select the appropriate Instrument Name by clicking on the search icon	Y
Term Sheet - hyperlink	Enables the user to view the instrument details available in the generic Instrument Master by clicking on the hyperlink,	
Security Code	Displays the alternate id of the selected instrument	
Instrument Currency	Displays the currency for the selected Instrument. Once the user selects the Instrument Name, system auto-populates this field.	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Settlement Currency	This field captures the settlement date for an instrument, based on the settlement cycle maintained in the system for the exchange on which the instrument trades.	
Custody Fee	This field displays the Custody Fee based on the customer segment & IAG	
Instrument Group	Displays the Instrument Group for the selected Instrument. Once the user selects the Instrument Name, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Exchange	Enables the user to select the appropriate Exchange	
Last Traded Clean Price	Displays the Last Traded Price	
Counterparty	Enables the user to select the appropriate counterparty	Y
<b>Order Details</b>		
Trade Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate trade date. The system does not allow the user to enter the future trade date. If the trade date falls on the system or exchange holiday, the system displays the appropriate warning message.	Based on FAC
Settlement Date	Captures the settlement date for an instrument, based on the settlement cycle maintained in the system for the exchange on which the instrument trades.	Based on FAC
Account Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate account type i.e. Demat or Non-Demat	
Account No	Enables the user to enter the Account No	Y
Transaction Type	Displays the appropriate transaction type – Buy or Sell	Y
Order Type	Displays the appropriate order type – market order, Limit Order or Stop Loss Order	Y
Trigger Price	Enables the user to enter the appropriate price at which the trade is expected to happen	
Time Condition	Enables the user to enter the appropriate time condition. The options available are IOC, GTC and Timed Order	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Expiry Date	Displays the order expiry date.	
Nominal Amount	It displays the stated value of an issued security which remains fixed	
Quantity	Display the units, which are calculated as Nominal Amount/Face Value	
Accrued Days	Displays the number of days for which the last accrual of interest has happened	
Accrued Interest	Displays the appropriate interest accrued for the selected instrument	
Treasury Price	Enables the user to enter the appropriate treasury price. This field is enabled only if the instrument is unit based, else the system displays it in the disabled mode	
Treasury Yield	Displays the corresponding YTM for a given Treasury price	
Customer Price	Enables the user to enter the price charged to the client	
Customer Yield	This field populates with the corresponding YTM for a given Customer price	
Spread (Bps)	Enables the user to enter the appropriate spread value. This is a display only field for unit based instrument.	
Transaction Fee	Displays the transaction fee for the selected transaction	
Treasury Total Amount	It displays the amount calculated as Treasury Total Amount =(Treasury price*Quantity)+Accrued Interest	
Customer Total Amount	It displays the amount calculated as Client Total Amount = (Price to client*Quantity)+Accrued Interest +transaction Fee	
Profit (Flat)	It displays the profit amount calculated as Profit = Nominal Amount * (Customer Price – Treasury Price) + Trade Fee	
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate Counterparty Name	
Counterparty Ref No	Enables the user to enter the appropriate ref no.	


Field	Description	Mandatory
Application No	Enables the user to enter the Application No	Y
Description	Enables the user to enter the description for the selected order, if any	
<b>Payment Details</b>		
Payment Method	Enables the user to select the appropriate method from the drop-down list	Y
Bank Account No	Enables the user to select the appropriate bank account no from the drop-down list	
Cheque No	Enables the user to select the appropriate cheque no from the drop-down list	
Comments	Enables the user to enter the comments for the selected order, if any	


#### Procedure for Placing of an Order:

##### Step 1:

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' is the first field displayed on the Order screen. Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

##### Step 2:


Click the  icon next to the Instrument Name field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Instrument Name field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Instrument Name.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name following fields are automatically get populated.

- Security Code
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Custody Fee
- Instrument Group

- Exchange
- Last Traded Clean Price

The user can select the instrument by searching for the security using  icon as explained in general characteristics section.



The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

The user can also view the instrument details available in the Generic Instrument Master by clicking on the Term Sheet hyperlink. The Term Sheet pop-up window appears as below:

**FLEXCUBE - PRIVATE BANKING - CUST Instrument Details - SP Txn Buy - M...**

### Instrument Details

Instrument Name : UOB IB Market linked Plan  
 Issuer : UOB  
 Instrument Currency : SGD  
 Settlement Currency : INR  
 Alternate Currency : Singapore Dollar  
 Face Value : 10.00  
 Minimum Amount : 500,000.00  
 Start Ref Date : 01/12/2008

**Underlying Asset**

Type	Name	Lifecycle Event Description
Instrument	Mundra Port Ltd	The price at any point crosses a barrier of 1000 -*(%)%

**Key Parameters**

Contingent coupon	15%
Coupon	12 %

**Payout Details**

10percent if the barrier is hit else 20 percent %&\*(%)., ▲▼

**Print**

**Figure 5.19: Instrument Details Pop-up Window**

**Step 3:**

Select the appropriate Trade Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 5:**

Select the appropriate account type from the Account Type drop-down list.

**Step 6:**

Select the appropriate account number from the Account Number drop-down list.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Treasury Price text box.

Once the user enters the Treasury Price, the system calculates and displays the corresponding YTM in the Treasury Yield. This field is enabled only if the selected instrument is unit based.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Customer Price text box.

This field is a free text box if the selected Order Type is Limit Order and based on the price entered by the user, it adjusts its spread and derives the Treasury price and populates the same in the Treasury Price text box.

Once the user enters the Customer Price, the system calculates and displays the corresponding YTM in the Customer Yield.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate spread amount in the Spread text box if the selected instrument is amount based instrument.



Also if the transaction fee is applicable for the logged in customer, system displays it in the Transaction Fee text box.

Once the Treasury Price, Customer Price and Transaction Fee are entered, the system calculates and displays the Treasury Total Amount and Customer Total Amount.

The system also calculates the Profit amount and displays it in the Profit (Flat) text box. In case of amount based instrument, the system does not display any value in this text box.

**Step 10:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty using the  icon next to the Counterparty Name field.

**Step 11:**

Enter the appropriate reference number in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.

**Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Commitment Amount text box.

The Commitment Amount Applicable field is enabled in the screen only if Commitment Amount Applicable field has been set to Y in the Product Master. The system also displays the draw down amount till date if the Commitment Amount Applicable field is Y.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate application no. in the Application No. text box.

**Step 14:**

Enter the description in the Description text box, if any.

**Step 15:**

From the Payment Method drop-down list, select the appropriate payment method.

The available options for payment method are ECS, Cheque and DD.

**Step 16:**

From the Bank Account No. drop-down list, select the appropriate account no.

**Step 17:**

Enter the appropriate cheque no. in the Cheque No. text box.

**Step 18:**

Enter the comments in the Comments text box, if any.

**Step 19:**

Click the Save button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the Exception displays pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation



Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

## **Structured Products Order Capture: Sell**

### **User Access levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

### **Screen:**

The screenshot displays the Oracle FLEXCUBE Private Banking interface for 'Structured Products Order Capture - Sell'. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Customer', 'Financial Planning', 'Order Mgmt', 'Txn Mgmt', 'Reports', 'Tools', 'My Workspace', and 'Logout'. The user is logged in as 'HO HEAD' on 27/05/2011 at 7:06 PM. The main form is titled 'Txn Mgmt>Structured Products' and has two tabs: 'Buy' (selected) and 'Unwind'. The form is organized into three main sections: 'Customer Details', 'Instrument Details', and 'Transaction Details'. The 'Customer Details' section includes fields for 'Customer No' (10906), 'Customer Name' (Sanjot Kohli), and 'Portfolio Name' (RM Managed). The 'Instrument Details' section includes fields for 'Instrument Name' (Test SP1), 'Security Code' (T), 'Instrument Group' (EQ), 'Instrument Currency' (INR), 'Settlement Currency' (INR), 'Account Number' (0313130513), 'Quantity' (1000), and 'Nominal Amount' (10000). The 'Transaction Details' section includes fields for 'Transaction Date' (10/000), 'Settlement Date' (12/000), 'Quantity' (150), 'Interest Earned' (100), 'Total Amount' (100), 'Counterparty Ref. No.', 'Counterparty' (LALIT TANUJ), 'Exchange Rate', and 'Asset Transfer Out' (Yes/No). A 'Match With Order' button is located at the bottom left of the form, and 'Submit' and 'Clear' buttons are at the bottom right.

**Figure 5.20: SP & Alternatives Order Capture – Sell Screen**

### **Screen Navigation:**

**After logging in the system select** Order Management → SP and Alternatives. The screen will default to the Buy tab. Click the Sell tab.

**Procedure:****Step 1:**

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' is the first field displayed on the Order screen.

The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y' .

**Step 5:**

From the Instrument Name drop-down list, select the appropriate Instrument name.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name, following fields are automatically populated with the corresponding information.

- Security Code
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Custody Fee
- Instrument Group
- Last Traded Clean Price
- Exchange
- Nominal Amount (Held)
- Quantity(Held)

**Step 6:**

Select the appropriate Trade Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 7:**

Select the appropriate Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 8:**

Select the appropriate order type from the Order Type drop-down list.

**Step 9:**

Select the appropriate time condition from the Time Condition Type drop-down list.

**Step 10:**

Select the appropriate account type from the Account Type drop-down list.

**Step 11:**

Select the appropriate account number from the Account Number drop-down list.

**Step 12:**

Select the appropriate account number from the Account Number drop-down list.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Treasury Price text box.

**Step 14:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Customer Price text box.

**Step 15:**

Enter the appropriate spread amount in the Spread text box if the selected instrument is amount based instrument.

Once the Treasury Price, Customer Price and Transaction Fee are entered, the system calculates and displays the Treasury Total Amount and Customer Total Amount.

**Step 16:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty using the  icon next to the Counterparty Name field.

**Step 17:**

Enter the appropriate reference number in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box

**Step 18:**

From the Bank Account No. drop-down list, select the appropriate bank account no.

**Step 19:**

Click the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, system displays the Exception pop-up window stating the conditions that are violated. Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

## 5.6.2 Transaction Processing for Structured Products



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Alternative Investments' Module of FCPB.

### Description:

Structured Product is generally a pre-packaged investment strategy which is based on derivatives, such as a single security, a basket of securities, options, indices, commodities, debt issuances and/or foreign currencies, and to a lesser extent, swaps.

Combinations of derivatives and financial instruments create structures that have significant risk/return and/or cost savings profiles that may not be otherwise achievable in the marketplace. Structured products are designed to provide investors with highly targeted investments tied to their specific risk profiles, return requirements and market expectations.

These products are created through the process of financial engineering, i.e. by combining underlying like shares, bonds, indices or commodities with derivatives. The value of derivative securities, such as options, forwards and swaps is determined by the prices of the underlying securities.

The benefits of structured products (such as principal protected notes) can include:

- Principal protection
- Enhanced returns within an investment
- Reduced volatility (or risk) within an investment

Apart from Structured Products, the other Alternatives instruments like Private Equity Funds, Venture Capital Funds or Real Estate Funds are medium to long-term funds which invest in equity stakes in potentially high growth unquoted companies. Investors specify a minimum commitment amount and commitment period for investing in such funds. The actual portion of the capital commitment amount is paid from time to time either based on a mutually agreed drawdown schedule or by an on-call drawdown after receiving a drawdown notice. Additional commitment from the existing contributors during additional closings is allowed. Sale of units is possible only on maturity. Usually there will be no public market for the units and subject to certain limited exceptions, such units or beneficial interests will not be transferable.

These products are synthetic investment instruments specially created to meet specific needs that cannot be met from the standardized financial instruments available in the markets. Structured products can be used: as an alternative to a direct investment; as part of the asset allocation process to reduce risk exposure of a portfolio or to utilize the current market trend.

## Structured Product's Transaction Management - Buy

### User Access levels:

**Customer:** Can capture the transactions only for his/her available portfolios.

**STOP** There are no restrictions on the either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

## **Screen:**

**Figure 5.21: SP Transaction Management - Buy Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system, select the Transaction Management → Structured Products

**STOP** Please note that, only the purchase transactions of the holdings for the instrument type 'Structured Products' can be captured through this screen.

## **Rules for Capturing a Transaction:**

- Transactions can be captured only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a transaction the customer should have at least one of the portfolios portfolio coupled to his/her id.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No.	Displays the Customer No	
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name	
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Mandatory</b>
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument Name field.	Y
Security Code	Displays the Security Code of the selected instrument. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	
Instrument Group	Displays the Instrument Group for the selected Instrument. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	
Instrument Currency	Displays the currency for the selected instrument name. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	
Settlement Currency	Displays the instrument settlement currency. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	
<b>Transaction Details</b>		
Transaction Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date using the calendar icon	Y
Settlement Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate settlement date using the calendar icon	Y
Account Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate account type	
Account Number	Enables the user to enter the appropriate account number	
Nominal Amount	Enables the user to enter the nominal amount. It is the stated value of an issued security which remains fixed.	Y
Quantity	Enables the user to enter the appropriate transaction quantity in the Quantity text box	Y
Price	Enables the user to enter the appropriate price per unit for the selected instrument in the Price/Unit text box	Y
Interest	Enables the user to enter the appropriate accrued interest	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Field beside Interest Dropdown	<p>Should accept positive numeric values only.</p> <p>On navigation of mouse pointer to field, system should display tool tip.</p> <p>If Value selected in Dropdown is "Paid", tool tip should read as "Interest Paid".</p> <p>If Value selected in Dropdown is "Received", tool tip should read as "Interest Received".</p>	
Commission	Allows user to enter the commission	
Fee	Enables the user to enter the appropriate fee	
Exchange Rate	Enables the user to enter the appropriate exchange rate when instrument CCY is different from settl. CCY	
Tax and Other Charges	Enables the user to enter the appropriate tax and other charges.	
Amount	Displays the total transaction amount. Once the user enters the Nominal Amt/Quantity and Price/Unit fields, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Commitment Amount	Displays the commitment amount of payment for the selected instrument, when the Commitment Amount Applicable is Yes for the instrument.	Y
Asset Transfer In	Enables the user to enter the appropriate option for Asset Transfer	
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate counterparty name who executes the transaction.	
Counterparty Ref No	Enables the user to enter the Counterparty Ref. No. in the text box provided. This is a reference number usually assigned by the external service provider.	
Description	<p>Enables the user to enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.</p> <p>It is a free text box and allows the user to enter maximum 250 characters.</p>	
Match With Order	The user can match the placed order with this particular transaction. Clicking on this button will pop a window from which the required order can be tagged to this transaction.	

## **Procedure for Capturing a Transaction:**


### **Step 1:**

The system auto-populates the name, no. and default portfolio name of the customer which is already in context.

### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

### **Step 3:**



The subsequent step is to select the Structured Product. The user can select the Structured Product either by directly entering the name of the product or by searching for the product by clicking the  button.



The structured product search screen displays only the schemes which are in open status.

On selecting the structured product, the instrument currency, settlement currency and the exchange in which the product is listed will be displayed in the corresponding 'Instrument Currency', 'Settlement Currency', and 'Exchange' fields in the screen.

### **Step 4:**

The user then proceeds to capture the purchase details of the holding. The first step in this process is to capture the date of purchase. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Transaction Date' field. Click on the icon , in order to open the calendar. The user can also select the settlement date using the  icon located next to the Settlement Date field.

As these transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions.

The user is also restricted from capturing a future purchase date.

### **Step 5:**

Select the appropriate account type from the Account Type drop-down list.

### **Step 6:**

Select the appropriate account number from the Account Number drop-down list.





The system defaults the Account Number based on the Flags selected at Instrument Type level. If the Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Account Number. field.

**Step 7:**

Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Nominal Amount filed box.

Once the nominal amount is entered, the system displays the quantity calculated using the formula Amount/Face Value.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Purchase Price field.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate interest in the Interest field.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate fee if any, in the Fee field.

**Step 11:**

Enter the appropriate tax and other charges if any, in the Tax & Other Charges field.

Once the fees and tax are entered, system displays the Total Amount.

**Step 12:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty name using the search icon.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate ref no in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.


**Step 14:**

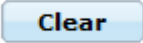
Enter the appropriate rate in the Exchange Rate text box.

**Step 15:**

Select the appropriate option for Asset Transfer In field.

**Step 16:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, you can proceed to click on the submit  button. On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If you change your decision on updating the holding, you have the option to clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

**Structured Product's Transaction Management- Unwind**

**User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the unwind transactions only for his/her available portfolios.

## Screen:

The screenshot displays the 'Txn Mgmt-Structured Products' screen in the Oracle system. The interface includes a top navigation bar with links for 'Txn Mgmt', 'Order Mgmt', 'Home', 'Portfolio', 'Txn Management', 'Order Mgmt', 'Master', 'Tools', 'Reports', and 'My Workspace'. The main content area is titled 'Txn Mgmt-Structured Products' and shows a form for entering transaction details. The form is divided into several sections: 'Instrument Details' (Instrument Name, Security Code, Instrument Group, Settlement Currency, Nominal Amount), 'Transaction Details' (Transaction Date, Settlement Date, Price, Interest), and 'Fees' (Penalty on Unwind, Commission, Brokerage Fee, Asset Transfer Out, Counterparty Description, Counterparty Ref. No.). The form includes a 'Submit' button and a 'Clear' button. The screen also displays the 'Customer No: 1019' and 'Customer Name: Racha S'.

**Figure 5.22: SP Transaction Management – Unwind Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system, select Txn Management → Structured Products. The screen defaults to the Buy tab. Click on the Unwind tab.

## **Rules for Commencement of a Transaction:**

- Transactions can be updated only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a holding the customer should have at least one portfolio coupled to his/her id and have holdings of an SP instrument type.

## **Procedure for Capturing a Transaction:**

### **Step 1:**

Pre-filled information of the holding is displayed on accessing the screen. The screen will display the number and name of the customer.

### **Step 2:**

Select the appropriate portfolio and the instrument from the Instrument Name drop-down list.

Once the instrument is selected, the system displays the Security Code, Instrument Group, Instrument Currency, Settlement Currency and Exchange rate.

### **Step 3:**

Select the appropriate account no. from the Account Number drop-down list. The Nominal amount is displayed on selection of the account number.

### **Step 4:**

The first step is to capture the date of sale transaction called transaction date and then fill up the settlement date. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Transaction

Date' field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

The system validates the date entered against the purchase date. The user will be restricted to the extent of capturing a date before the purchase date. The user is also restricted from capturing a future sale date.

### **Step 5:**

In the next step the user has to capture the Nominal Amount, Price, Interest, Fee, Commission and Tax and Other charges.



Once the Nominal Amount Is entered, system displays the Quantity calculated as Amount/Face Value. The Quantity and Price fields are enabled only for Unit based instruments.

**Step 6:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty name using the search icon.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate ref no in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.


**Step 8:**

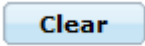
Select the appropriate option for Asset Transfer Out field.

**Step 9:**

Enter the order details if any, in the Description text box.

**Step 10:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, you can proceed to click on the Submit  button. On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If the user changes the decision on updating the holding, to clear the entire details captured earlier, click on the  button.

## 5.7 **PMS**

### 5.7.1 **Order Management for PMS**



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'PMS' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank, only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Alternative Investments' module and 'Order Management' module.

#### **PMS Order Capture: Buy**

##### **User Access levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## **Screen:**

Oracle  
PMS Order Capture

Home Portfolio Ten Management Order Mgmt Master Tools Reports My Workspace

Order Mgmt > PMS > PMS Order Capture

Customer No: 1234 Customer Name: Ruchi S

Portfolio Name: Self Managed

Instrument Details  
Instrument Name:

Currency:

Order Details  
Order Type: Buy  
Account No.:   
Application No.:   
Inverted Amount:   
Transaction Fee (including taxes and charges):  Total Amount:

Bank Details  
Payment Method:   
Bank Account No.:   
Cheque No.:

Submit Cancel

**Figure 5.23: PMS Order Capture – Buy Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system select Order Management → PMS → PMS Order capture

### **Rules for commencement of an Order:**

The rules for placing the PMS order are Orders can be placed only for customers in active status.

- The bank account information of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No.	Enables the user to select the customer by clicking on the search icon available next to the Customer No field	Y
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name for the selected Customer No	Y
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
Source Code	Displays the Source Code for the banker who has sourced the transaction	Y
Lead Generation Code	Displays the Lead Generation Code for the banker who has provided the lead for the transaction	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument Name field.	
Currency	Displays the currency for the selected instrument name. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Holding Amount	Displays holding amount	
<b>Order Details</b>		
Order Type	Displays the order type in the drop-down list, whether Buy or Sell	
Account No	Enables the user to enter the Account No	Y
Application No	Enables the user to enter the Application No	Y
Invested Amount	Displays Invested amount for Buy and Redemption amount for Sell	Y
<b>Bank Account Details</b>		
Payment Method	Enables the user to select the appropriate method from the drop-down list	Y
Bank Account No	Enables the user to select the appropriate bank account no from the drop-down list	


Field	Description	Mandatory
Cheque No	Displays the cheque no. for the order capture. This field appears only for Buy orders.	
Redemption Amount	Displays Redemption Amount	


### Procedure for Placing of an Order:


#### Step 1:

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

#### Step 2:

Click the  icon next to the Instrument Name field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Instrument Name field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Instrument Name.

 The instrument search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name following fields are automatically get populated.

- Instrument Group
- Currency

#### Step 3:

From the Order Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

There are two options available for PMS Order Capture. They are Buy and Sell. By default Buy option is selected.

#### Step 4:

Enter the appropriate account no. in the Account No. text box.



**Step 5:**

Enter the appropriate application no. in the Application No. text box.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate amount to invest in the Invested Amount text box.

**Step 7:**

From the Payment Method drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

The options available for Payment Method are ECS, Cheque, and DD.

**Step 8:**

From the Bank Account No. drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate cheque no. in the Cheque No. text box.

**Step 10:**

Click the Save button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation

Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'



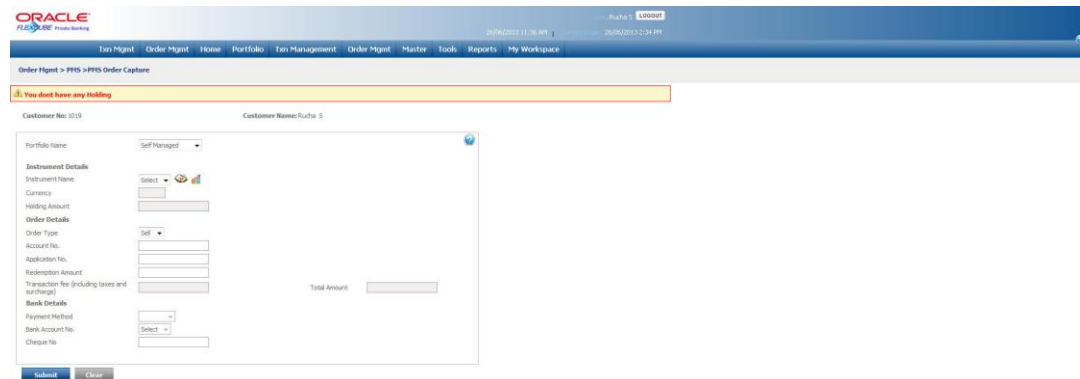
If an order is placed for a particular PMS with a particular Account No., the subsequent orders for that PMS should be placed with the same Account No.

**PMS Order Capture: Sell**

## **User Access levels:**

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## **Screen:**



**Figure 5.24: PMS Order Capture Screen**

## **Screen Navigation:**

Select the Order Management → PMS → PMS Order capture. From the Order Type drop-down list, select the Sell option.

### **Procedure:**

#### **Step 1:**

From the Order Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

Here select the Sell option. Once the user selects the Sell option, the available Instrument names appears in the drop-down list.

#### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' is the first field displayed on the Order screen.

The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

#### **Step 3:**

From the Instrument Name drop-down list, select the appropriate instrument.

Once the user selects the appropriate Instrument Name, the following fields are automatically populated.

- Currency
- Holding Amount
- Account No.

#### Step 4:

Enter the appropriate application no. in the Application No. text box.

#### Step 5:

Enter the appropriate amount in the Redemption Amount text box.

#### Step 6:

Click the Save button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, the system displays the “Order Placed Successfully” message.

### User Access levels:

**Customer:** Can capture the commodities holdings for his/her available portfolio created either by the customer or by the RM.



There are no restrictions on the either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

### Screen:

**Figure 5.25: Commodities Transaction Management Screen**

**Screen Navigation:**

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Commodities

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No.	Displays the Customer No field	
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name	
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument Name field.	
Instrument Currency	Displays the instrument currency for the selected instrument name. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument.	Y
Measure Units	Displays the measure of units for the selected instrument. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
<b>Transaction Details</b>		
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction type from the drop-down list.	
Transaction Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date using the calendar icon	Y
Settlement Date	Enables the user to enter the appropriate settlement date using the calendar icon.	N
Quantity	Enables the user to enter the appropriate transaction quantity in the Quantity text box	Y
Price/Units	Enables the user to enter the appropriate price per unit for the selected instrument in the Price/Unit text box	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Amount	Displays the total transaction amount. Once the user selects the Quantity and Price/Unit fields, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Fees	Enables the user to enter the appropriate fee in the Fees field	N
Commission	Enables the user to enter the amount paid as commission in Commission field	N
Tax & Other Charges	Enables the user to enter the amount paid as transaction tax in the Tax field	N
Exchange Rate	Enables the user to enter the appropriate exchange rate in the Exchange Rate text box. The system defaults this value to '1' if the instrument currency and settlement currency is same.	Y
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to search for the appropriate Counterparty Name for the transaction.	N
Counterparty Ref No.	Enables the user to enter the transaction reference number.	N
Description	Enables the use to enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.  It is a free text box and allows the user to enter maximum 250 characters.	N
DP ID-Client ID	Displays the list of depositories and Client id combination available in the drop down list	Y

### **Procedure for Placing of an Transaction:**


#### **Step 1:**


The system auto-populates the name, no. and default portfolio name of the customer which is already in context.

#### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

#### **Step 3:**

Click the  icon next to the Instrument Name field.

Once the user clicks on the  icon, Instrument Search pop up window appears.

Enter the appropriate search criteria in the Name field to search for the Instrument Name.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name, following fields automatically populates.


- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Measured Units

**Step 4:**

From the Transaction Type drop-down list, select the appropriate Transaction Type.

The options available are Buy and Sell.

**Step 5:**

Click the  icon next to Transaction Date and Settlement Date fields and select the appropriate transaction and settlement dates.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate quantity in the Quantity field.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate price per unit in the Price/Units field.

The system then calculates the total amount and displays it in the Amount field.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate transaction fee in the Fees field.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate brokerage commission in the Commission field.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Tax & Other Charges field.

**Step 11:**

Enter the appropriate rate in the Exchange Rate text box.

This field is enabled only if the instrument and settlement currency is different else it is defaulted with value '1'.

**Step 12:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty name using the search icon.



If the user enters the Counterparty name, the Counterparty Ref No is a mandatory field else the system gives the error message.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate ref no in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.



If the user enters the Counterparty Ref No, the Counterparty name is a mandatory field else the system gives the error message.

**Step 14:**

Enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.

**Step 15:**

Select the appropriate account no. from the DP ID-Client ID drop-down list.

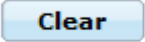


The system defaults the account no. based on the flags selected at Instrument Type level. If the Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Security Account field.

**Step 16:**

Click the Save button.

On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If you change your decision on updating the holding, you have the option to clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

## 5.8 **Transaction Processing for Other Collectibles**

### 5.8.1 **Transaction Processing for Others**



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Mutual Funds and Insurance' Module of FCPB.



## **Description:**

In this section, we will comprehend the transaction management for those holdings which cannot be classified into any of the above instrument categories. These holdings have been clubbed in to the category 'Others'.

We have also seen in the earlier sections that securities in FCPB are also categorized in to a range of asset classes. Currently the following asset classes have been defined in FCPB; namely equity, debt, art, real estate, gems, metals, cash and insurance. The different asset classes to be used by the bank can be identified and maintained by the administrator in the Reference Master Table.

The holdings in equity, bonds, mutual fund, and structured products can be chiefly grouped into the asset classes' equity, debt and cash. Though there are some mutual funds which also invest their corpus into other asset classes like real estate and art. The holdings in insurance will invariably fall into the asset class insurance. The user also has an additional facility to categorize all the holdings, which cannot be sorted into any of the above defined asset classes, into the category 'others'.

It is also imperative for us to recapitulate our understanding on the rudiments of the types of portfolios defined in the FCPB. All the transactions for the instruments defined under the category 'Others' can be captured by the user into any of the portfolios. The consideration for allowing the user to capture his/her holdings in the Held Away portfolios, though these holdings have not be acquired through the FCPB, is due to the perception that these holdings could have been obtained through any other system within the bank.

As the transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions. Currently, there is no restriction on the user in sequencing the backdated transactions. The system will automatically sequence the transactions as per the date of execution as entered by the user.

## **Other's Transaction Management - Buy**

### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the transactions only for available portfolios.



There are no restrictions on the either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

## Screen:

The screenshot shows the Oracle FLEXCUBE Transaction Management interface. The top navigation bar includes links for Transaction Management, Order Management, Home, Portfolio, Transaction Management, Order Management, Master, Tools, Reports, and My Workspace. The main content area is titled 'Transaction Management > Others'. It displays a form for creating or managing transactions. The form is divided into sections: 'Portfolio Name' (set to 'Self Managed'), 'Instrument Details' (with radio buttons for 'New' and 'Existing'), 'Asset Class' (set to 'Others'), 'Country', 'Region', 'Instrument Group', 'Transaction Details' (with fields for 'Transaction Date', 'Currency' (set to 'USD'), 'Amount', 'Pays', 'Tax & Other charges', and 'Description'), and a 'Please refer to the Customer' section at the bottom. The 'Instrument Group' dropdown is highlighted, showing a list of instrument groups.

**Figure 5.26 Other's Transaction Management Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Others

This screen has been elucidated in depth in the next section.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No.	Displays the Customer Number	
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name	
Portfolio Name	Enable user to select from the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument	<p>Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument by clicking the radio button. The options available are New &amp; Existing.</p> <p>If the user selects the New option, the system allows the user to enter the new instrument name in the Name text box.</p> <p>If the user selects the Existing option, the search icon appears next to the Name field and the system allows the user to search for the existing instrument using that icon.</p>	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Instrument Name	<p>Enables the user to enter the appropriate instrument name in the Name text box.</p> <p>If the user opts for the existing instrument, system allows the user to search for the existing instrument name using the search icon.</p>	Y
Asset Class	<p>Enables the user to select the appropriate Asset Class from the drop-down list.</p> <p>If the user opts for the existing instrument, system auto-populates this field.</p>	Y
Country	<p>Enables the user to select the appropriate country name from the drop-down list.</p> <p>If the user opts for the existing instrument, system auto-populates this field.</p>	Y
Region	<p>Displays the region for the selected country. Once the user selects the country, system populates the region for that country.</p> <p>If the user opts for the existing instrument, system auto-populates this field.</p>	
Instrument Group	<p>Displays all available Instrument groups in the drop-down list.</p> <p>If the user opts for the existing instrument, system auto-populates this field.</p>	Y
<b>Transaction Details</b>		
Transaction Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date using the calendar icon	Y
Currency	<p>Enables the user to select the appropriate currency from the drop-down list.</p> <p>If the user opts for the existing instrument, system auto-populates this field</p>	Y
Amount	<p>Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Amount field.</p> <p>Amount = Amount + Fees + Tax &amp; Other Charges</p>	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Fees	Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Fees field	N
Tax & Other Charges	Enables the user to enter the amount paid as transaction tax in the Tax field	N
Description	Enables the user to enter the information related to transaction in the Description free text field	N

### **Rules for Capturing a Transaction:**

- Transactions can be captured only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a transaction the customer should have at least one of the portfolios coupled to his/her id.

### **Procedure for Capturing a Transaction:**

#### **Step 1:**

The customer needs to navigate to Txn Management → Others

#### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

#### **Step 3:**

The subsequent step is to enter the Name of the Holding. It is a text field and the user can enter the Name or the description of the holding as conveniently interpretable by the user, else the customer can select an existing instrument by clicking on the search icon.



As this screen has been provided with the flexibility to capture all the additional holdings of the customer apart from the ones which can be easily classified into the system defined instrument types (equity, mutual fund, bond, structured product and insurance), it is impossible for the system to maintain a Master Table for such holdings. Due to this, the system cannot aggregate multiple purchases into the holding. Hence any additional purchases need to be captured as separate security-holding or first time purchase.

#### **Step 4:**


The next step is to categorize the holdings into any of the asset classes as provided in the drop down list. In order to capture any holding in this instrument category, it is mandatory for the user to choose one of asset class. To recap, holdings which cannot be sorted into any of the defined asset classes can be categorized into the asset class 'others'. If the instrument is an existing entity, the asset class shall get defaulted.

#### **Step 5:**

After selecting the asset class, the subsequent step is to capture the country to which the asset belongs and was purchased. This can be done by selecting the names of the countries provided in the dropdown list in the field 'Country'. If the instrument is an existing entity, the country shall get defaulted.

On selecting the country, the system will display the corresponding 'Region' associated to the country. Then Instrument Group too gets selected if an existing instrument is selected, else the data should be selected from the dropdown list.

#### **Step 6:**

The user then proceeds to capture the purchase details of the holding. The first step in this process is to capture the date of purchase. The calendar for selecting the date has been provided adjacent to 'Purchase Date' field. Click on the icon  , in order to open the calendar.

As these transactions have been carried out outside the FCPB system, the user has been provided with the flexibility to capture backdated transactions. The transactions in these portfolios can be backdated maximum till the customer creation date.

The user is also restricted from capturing a future purchase date.

#### **Step 7:**

In the next step the user has to capture the currency of the holding. The currencies are provided as a drop down list. It is obligatory for the user to capture the currency of the holding. If the instrument is an existing entity, the currency shall get defaulted.

#### **Step 8:**

The next significant step is to capture the net purchase price of the holding. Please note that it is this price which will be considered for the purpose of analysis and performance computation and hence it is the onus of the user to enter the accurate value. This field too is mandatory for entry by the user.

#### **Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate transaction fee in the Transaction Fee field.

#### **Step 10:**


In the next step has been provided to capture the Tax and Other Charges paid for obtaining the holding. Please note currently, this field is not being utilized for any of the valuation, analysis or performance computations.

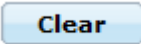
The Amount field is the sum of the Amount, Fees and Tax & Other Charges fields.

#### **Step 11:**

The next field 'Description' has been provided to the user to enter any essential information on the holding. This field is a free text field.

#### **Step 12:**

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the save  button. On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

To clear the entire details captured earlier, click on the  button.

## **5.9 Commodities**

### **5.9.1 Order Management for Commodities**



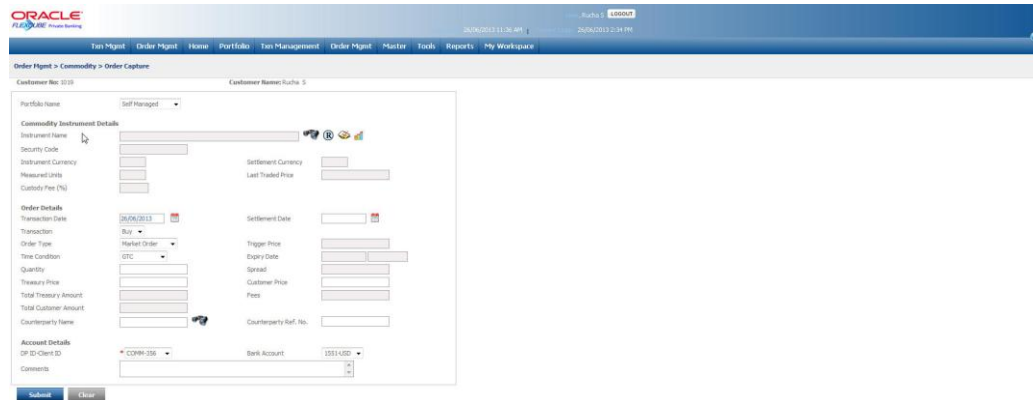
Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Commodities' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank, only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Alternative Investments' Module and 'Order Management' module.

#### **Commodities Order Capture: Buy**

## User Access levels:

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios. The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## Screen:



**Figure 5.27: Commodity Order Capture Screen - Buy**

## Screen Navigation:

Entry to the screen:

### **Option 1**

Select the "Order Management" option on the main menu

→ Commodity → Order capture

### **Rules for commencement of an Order:**

The rules for placing the Commodities order are

- Orders can be placed only for customers in active status.
- The bank account information of the customer also needs to be updated in the FCPB prior to initiating an order.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Commodity Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate commodity name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument Name field.	Y
Security Code	Displays the Security Code of the selected security. It displays the Security Code based on the Field Access Controller.	
Instrument Currency	Displays the currency for the selected instrument name. Once the Bond Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency for the selected bond instrument maintained in the bond master.	Y
Measured Units	Displays the appropriate measured units. It displays measured units selection as per the selected instrument. It indicates the base for price computation of the commodity instruments.	
Last Traded Price	Displays the Last Traded Price defined in the Price Master table.	
<b>Order Details</b>		
Transaction Date	Enables the user to enter the appropriate Transaction Date.	Y
Settlement Date	Enables the user to enter the appropriate Settlement Date.	Y
Transaction	Displays the order type in the drop-down list, whether Buy or Sell	Y
Order Type	Specifies the Price condition of the order for the selected instrument.	Y
Time Condition	Specifies the validity of order with respect to time. When the Timed order is selected, system populates additional field Expiry Date and enables the user to enter the appropriate date and time.	Y
Quantity	Displays the number of the units of the commodity.	Y
Customer Price	This field displays the Customer Price per unit of Commodity Currency.	Y




Field	Description	Mandatory
Fees	Fee charged to the customer based on segment, Instrument Group (IAG) of the customer. The fee includes Taxes and Charges.	Y
Total Customer Amount	It displays the Total Amount charged to customer as per Customer Price i.e. (Customer Price *Quantity )+ Fee	
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to search for the appropriate Counterparty Name for the transaction.	Based on FAC
Counterparty Ref No.	Enables the user to enter the transaction reference number.	Based on FAC
Description	Enables the user to capture the transaction details for the order.	N
<b>Account Details</b>		
DP ID – Client ID	Displays the depository trading accounts available for the customer depending on the selected Portfolio Name.  If the Order Type is Sell then it displays only those DP Id-Client Ids in drop-down against which a Buy transaction was done for the selected portfolio. If the Allow Omnibus flag is selected as Y at Instrument Type level, the system defaults this drop-down to the Omnibus Account No along with the DP ID – Client ID.	Y
Bank Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate bank account no from the drop-down list	Y
Comments	Enables the user to capture remarks before saving the order details.	Y/N


### Procedure for Placing of an Order:


#### Step 1:

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

#### Step 2:

Click the  icon next to the Instrument Name field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Instrument Name field, Security Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Instrument Name.

 The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name following fields are automatically get populated.

- Security Code
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Measured Units
- Last Traded Price
- Spread

**Step 3:**

Enter the appropriate Transaction Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 4:**

Enter the appropriate Settlement Date using the calendar icon.

**Step 5:**

From the Transaction Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

There are two options available for Commodity Order Capture. The options are Buy and Sell.

**Step 6:**

From the Order Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

If the user selects the Order Type as Stop Loss or Limit Order, the Trigger price field is editable and user can enter the desired trigger price else system auto-populates the appropriate trigger price.

**Step 7:**

Select the appropriate option from Time Condition drop-down list.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate quantity in the Quantity text box.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Treasury Price text box.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Customer Price text box.

Once the Quantity and Treasury Price and Customer Price are entered, system auto-populates Spread, Total Treasury Amount, Total Customer Amount and Fee amount if any.



The system auto-populates the Spread amount depending on the Customer Segment, IAG and Order Type combination. However, the system recalculates this amount based on Customer Price and Treasury Price. It can have negative value when the Customer Price is less than the Treasury Price for Buy order and when the Customer Price is more than the Treasury Price for Sell order.



If Spread is not defined in the master then system defaults the field to zero value.

**Step 11:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty Name using the  icon.

**Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate ref. no. in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate description in the Description text box.

**Step 14:**

From the DP ID – Client ID drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

**Step 15:**

From the Bank Account No. drop-down list, select the appropriate option.

**Step 16:**

Click the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation
- Trigger Price more/less than 'x%' of the LTP (where 'x' is the no. which is configurable)
- Spread deviated, approval required.

The customer can self approve all the exceptions that occur in the order capture if the error levels are not '99999'

## **Commodity Order Capture: Sell**

### **User Access levels:**

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

***Figure 5.28: Commodity Order Capture Screen - Sell***

### **Screen Navigation:**

Select the Order Management → Commodity → Commodity Order capture. From the Transaction drop-down list, select the Sell option.

To place the Commodity – Sell transaction follow the same procedure as explained in Commodity - Order Capture – Buy above. The only difference here is that the user needs to select the transaction type as Sell from the Transaction Type drop-down list.

The system allows the user to place the Sell transaction only for those instruments for which the customer has holdings.

## 5.9.2 Transaction Processing for Commodities

**STOP** Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Alternative Investments' Module of FCPB..

The Commodities category under Transaction Management is used to enter the post trade entries for instrument type Commodities.

### User Access levels:

**Customer:** Can capture the commodities holdings for his/her available portfolio created either by the customer or by the RM.

**STOP** There are no restrictions on the either of the users for updating the holdings in either the RM or customer created portfolios.

### Screen:

***Figure 5.29 Commodities Transaction Management Screen***

### Screen Navigation:

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Commodities

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No.	Displays the Customer No field	
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Instrument Details</b>		
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument name by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument Name field.	
Instrument Currency	Displays the instrument currency for the selected instrument name. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency for the selected instrument.	Y
Measure Units	Displays the measure of units for the selected instrument. Once the Instrument Name is selected, system auto-populates this field.	Y
<b>Transaction Details</b>		
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction type from the drop-down list.	
Transaction Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date using the calendar icon	Y
Settlement Date	Enables the user to enter the appropriate settlement date using the calendar icon.	N
Quantity	Enables the user to enter the appropriate transaction quantity in the Quantity text box	Y
Price/Units	Enables the user to enter the appropriate price per unit for the selected instrument in the Price/Unit text box	Y
Amount	Displays the total transaction amount. Once the user selects the Quantity and Price/Unit fields, system auto-populates this field.	Y
Fees	Enables the user to enter the appropriate fee in the Fees field	N
Commission	Enables the user to enter the amount paid as commission in Commission field	N

Field	Description	Mandatory
Tax & Other Charges	Enables the user to enter the amount paid as transaction tax in the Tax field	N
Exchange Rate	Enables the user to enter the appropriate exchange rate in the Exchange Rate text box. The system defaults this value to '1' if the instrument currency and settlement currency is same.	Y
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to search for the appropriate Counterparty Name for the transaction.	N
Counterparty Ref No.	Enables the user to enter the transaction reference number.	N
Description	Enables the use to enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.  It is a free text box and allows the user to enter maximum 250 characters.	N
DP ID-Client ID	Displays the list of depositories and Client id combination available in the drop down list	Y

### **Procedure for placing of an Transaction:**


#### **Step 1:**


The system auto-populates the name, no. and default portfolio name of the customer which is already in context.

#### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

**Step 3:**

Click the  icon next to the Instrument Name field.

Once the user clicks on the  icon, Instrument Search pop up window appears.

Enter the appropriate search criteria in the Name field to search for the Instrument Name.

Once the user selects the Instrument Name, following fields automatically populates.


- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Measured Units

**Step 4:**

From the Transaction Type drop-down list, select the appropriate Transaction Type.

The options available are Buy and Sell.

**Step 5:**

Click the  icon next to Transaction Date and Settlement Date fields and select the appropriate transaction and settlement dates.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate quantity in the Quantity field.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate price per unit in the Price/Units field.

The system then calculates the total amount and displays it in the Amount field.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate transaction fee in the Fees field.



**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate brokerage commission in the Commission field.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Tax & Other Charges field.

**Step 11:**

Enter the appropriate rate in the Exchange Rate text box.

This field is enabled only if the instrument and settlement currency is different else it is defaulted with value '1'.

**Step 12:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty name using the search icon.



If the user enters the Counterparty name, the Counterparty Ref No is a mandatory field else the system gives the error message.

**Step 13:**

Enter the appropriate ref no in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.



If the user enters the Counterparty Ref No, the Counterparty name is a mandatory field else the system gives the error message.

**Step 14:**

Enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.

**Step 15:**

Select the appropriate account no. from the DP ID-Client ID drop-down list.

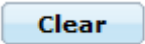


The system defaults the account no. based on the flags selected at Instrument Type level. If the Demat option is selected, then the system displays Omnibus A/c or Client A/c or both in the Security Account field.

**Step 16:**

Click the Save button.

On saving the holding you will be displayed with a confirmation message on the screen.

If you change your decision on updating the holding, you have the option to clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

## 5.10 Futures

### 5.10.1 Order Management for Futures

#### Futures Order Capture



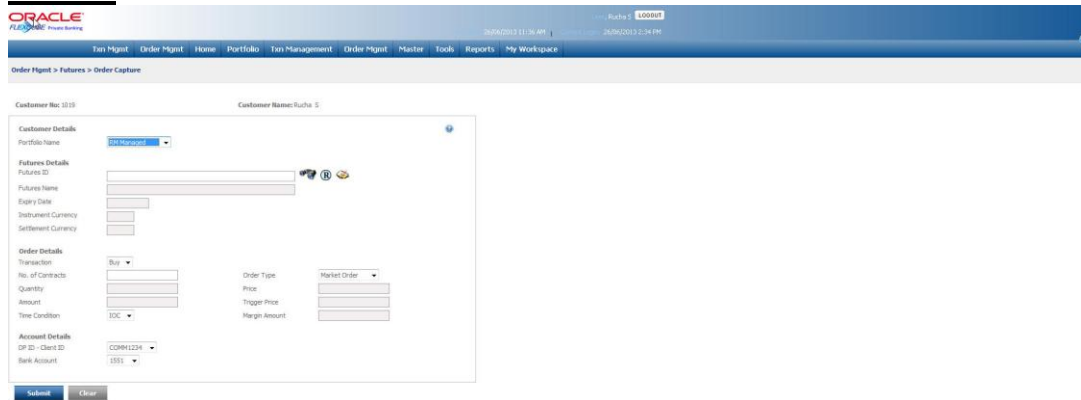
Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Futures' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Alternative Investments' module and 'Order Management' module..

#### User Access levels:

Customer can place orders for RM Managed and Self Managed portfolios.

The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'.

#### Screen:



**Figure 5.30: Futures Order Capture**

### **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system select Order Management → Futures → Order capture.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Futures Details</b>		
Futures ID	Enables the user to select the Futures ID using search icon.	Y
Futures Name	Once the user selects the Future ID, system auto-populates the corresponding Future name	Y
Expiry Date	The system also displays this field on selection of Future name	Y
Instrument Currency	Displays the instrument currency on selection of Future name	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency on selection of Future name	Y
Counterparty	Enables the user to select the appropriate broker or issuer using the search icon.	N
<b>Order Details</b>		
Transaction	Enables the user to select the transaction type from the drop-down list	Y
No. of Contracts	Enables the user to enter the appropriate no. of contracts	Y
Order Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate order type from the drop-down list	Y
Quantity	Displays the appropriate quantity in the text box once the user enters the no. of contracts.	Y
Price	Displays the appropriate price in the text box once the user enters the no. of contracts. It is in multiples of the tick size.	Y
Amount	It displays the contract value and is calculated as Quantity * Price	Y


Field	Description	Mandatory
Trigger Price	Enables the user to enter the trigger price if the Order Type is selected as Stop Loss or Limit Order from the drop-down list else system auto-populates the appropriate value.	Y
Time Condition	Enables the user to select the appropriate time condition.	Y
Margin Amount	Displays the margin amount and is calculated as No. of contracts * % of Margin defined per contract	Y
<b>Account Details</b>		
DP ID – Client ID	Enables the user to select the appropriate DP ID details of the selected customer.	
Bank Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate bank account detail of the selected customer.	


#### Procedure for Placing of an Order:


##### Step 1:

Customer – For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

**Step 3:**

Click the  icon next to the Future ID field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Future ID field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the future instrument.

 The instrument search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

Once the user selects the Future ID following fields are automatically get populated.

- Futures Name
- Expiry Date
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty using the search icon.

**Step 5:**

From the Transaction drop-down list, select the appropriate transaction type.

There are two options available for Futures Transaction. They are Buy and Sell. By default Buy option is selected.

**Step 6:**

From the Order Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

If the user selects the Order Type as Stop Loss or Limit Order, the Trigger price field is editable and user can enter the desired trigger price else system auto-populates the appropriate trigger price.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate number in the No. of Contracts text box.

Once the user enters the number in No. of Contracts field, system auto-populates the data in Quantity, Price, Amount and Margin Amount fields.

**Step 8:**

Select the appropriate option from Time Condition drop-down list.

**Step 9:**

Select the appropriate DP ID from the DP- ID drop-down list.

**Step 10:**

Select the appropriate account no. from the Bank Account drop-down list.

**Step 11:**

Click on the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation

Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

## **5.10.2 Transaction Processing for Futures**



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Alternative Investments' Module of FCPB.

### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the transactions only for his/her portfolios.

## **Screen:**

The screenshot shows the Oracle Financials interface for capturing a futures transaction. The top navigation bar includes links for 'Tan Mgmt', 'Order Mgmt', 'Home', 'Portfolio', 'Tan Management', 'Order Mgmt', 'Master', 'Tools', 'Reports', and 'My Workspace'. The main content area is titled 'Tan Mgmt > Futures'. It features a form with the following sections:

- Customer Details:** Includes 'Customer No.' (1010), 'Customer Name' (Ruchi S.), and a dropdown for 'Portfolio Name' set to 'Self Managed'.
- Futures Details:** Includes fields for 'Futures ID' (with a magnifying glass icon), 'Futures Name', 'Expiry Date', 'Instrument Currency', 'Settlement Currency', and 'Counterparty'.
- Transaction Details:** Includes a dropdown for 'Transaction' set to 'Buy', 'Quantity', 'Amount', 'Description', 'Transaction Date', and 'Price'.

At the bottom of the form are 'Submit' and 'Clear' buttons.

**Figure 5.31: Futures Transaction Capture**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging into the system, select Transaction Management → Futures

## **Procedure for Placing of a Transaction:**


### **Step 1:**


The system auto-populates the customer no., name and default portfolio name of the customer.

### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

### **Step 3:**


Click the  icon next to the Futures ID field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Futures ID field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Futures ID.

Once the user selects the Futures ID following fields are automatically get populated.

- Futures Name
- Expiry Date
- Instrument Currency

- Settlement Currency


The user can select the future instrument either by directly entering the id or by searching for the security using  icon as explained in general characteristics section.



The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, Focussed instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate issuer/broker by clicking on the  icon next to the Counterparty field.

**Step 5:**

Select the appropriate transaction option from the Transaction drop-down list.

**Step 6:**

Select the appropriate transaction date.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate quantity in the Quantity box.



The quantity entered should be in multiples of regular lot size.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate price in the Price field.

**Step 9:**

The amount field gets populated on entering valid Quantity and Price data.

**Step 10:**

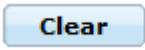


Enter the transaction description in the Description text box.

**Step 11:**

Click the Submit button.

On submitting the holding, the system displays a confirmation message on the screen.

If the user changes decision on updating the holding, can clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

## 5.11 Options

### 5.11.1 Order Management for Options



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Options' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank, only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Alternative Investments' module and 'Order Management' module.

### Options Order Capture

#### User Access levels:

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios.

The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## Screen:

**Figure 5.32: Options Order Capture**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system select Order Management → Options → Order capture.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Options Details</b>		
Options Name	Once the user selects the Options ID, system auto-populates the corresponding Options name	Y
Underlying Asset	Displays the Name of the underlying asset as captured in GIMS	Y
Options Type	Once the user selects the Options ID, system auto-populates the corresponding Options type	Y
Exercise Style	American/ European, Value defined at Instrument creation level is displayed	Y
Exchange	Display the list of exchange values	
Strike Price	This field displays the value defined at the time of creation of an Options instrument.	Y

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Mandatory</b>
Reference Date	Displays the Date when the underlying asset price is fixed	Y
Contract Settlement Date	Displays the Expiry date of a Options ID selected	Y
Instrument Currency	Displays the instrument currency on selection of Future name	Y
Settlement Currency	Displays the settlement currency on selection of Future name	Y
Commodity Currency	Displays the commodity currency on selection of Future name	N
Security Code	Displays the Security Code	Y
Last Traded Price	Displays the Last Traded Price from the Instrument Price	Y
<b>Order Details</b>		
Trade Date	By default display the current system date or business date whichever is later but user can modify the trade date.	Y
Premium Payment date	Displays the Payment date or date when Premium is received/ paid	Y
Transaction	Enables the user to select the transaction type from the drop-down list. By default the system selects the Buy option.	Y
Order Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate order type from the drop-down list. By default the system selects the Market Type option.	Y
No. of Contracts	Enables the user to enter the appropriate no. of contracts	Y
Quantity	Displays the appropriate quantity in the text box once the user enters the no. of contracts.	Y
Trigger Price	Enables the user to enter the trigger price if the Order Type is selected as Stop Loss or Limit Order from the drop-down list else system auto-populates the appropriate value.	Y
Time Condition	Enables the user to select appropriate values like GTC/IOC/Timed Order	Y


Field	Description	Mandatory
Expiry Date	Enables the user to enter Order Expiry Date	Y
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to enter the Name of the Counterparty for transaction	Based on FAC
Counterparty Ref No.	Enables the user to enter the Counterparty Reference Number	Based on FAC
Quantity	Displays the appropriate quantity in the text box once the user enters the no. of contracts.	Y
Bank Price	Enables the user to enter Option Price for Private Bank	Y
Total Unitary commission	Displays the Total commission paid by client	
Client Price	Enables the user to enter Option price for Client	
Broker Unitary commission	Displays the Unit Commission(per unit) to be paid by Broker	N
Private Unitary commission	Displays the Unit Commission(per unit) to be paid by Bank	N
Total Amount	It displays the contract value and is calculated as Quantity * Price	Y
Total Revenue	Displays the Total Commission received by the Bank	Y
Description	This text box will capture any specific details for the order that the user would like to input.	N
<b>Account Details</b>		
DP ID – Client ID	Enables the user to select the appropriate DP ID details of the selected customer.	Y
Bank Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate bank account detail of the selected customer.	Y
Comments	Allows to capture user remarks before saving the order details	Y/N


#### Procedure for Placing of an Order:

##### Step 1:

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.

**Step 2:**

Click the  icon next to the Option Name field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Option Name field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Option instrument.



The instrument search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.

Once the user selects the Option ID following fields are automatically get populated.

- Options Name
- Reference Date
- Contract Settlement Date
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency
- Commodity Currency

**Step 3:**

Select the appropriate Trade Date

By default display the current system date or business date whichever is later but user can modify the trade date.

**Step 4:**

Select Premium payment Date. Payment date or date when Premium is received/ paid.

**Step 5:**

From the Transaction drop-down list, select the appropriate transaction type.

There are two options available for Option Transaction. They are Buy and Sell. By default Buy option is selected.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate number in the No. of Contracts text box.

**Step 7:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty using Search Icon.

**Step 8:**

Select the appropriate ref no. in the Counterparty Ref No text box.

**Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate price in Bank Price (Premium Per Option) text box.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate price in Client Price (Premium Per Option) text box.

Once the user enters the Bank Price and Client Price, system auto-populates the data in Quantity, Total Unitary Commission, Broker Unitary Commission, Private Unitary Commission, Total Amount and Total Revenue fields.

**Step 11:**

Enter the description if any, in the Description text box.

**Step 12:**

Select the appropriate DP ID from the DP- ID drop-down list.

**Step 13:**

Select the appropriate account no. from the Bank Account drop-down list.

**Step 14:**

Click on the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation

Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

### **5.11.2 Transaction Processing for Options**

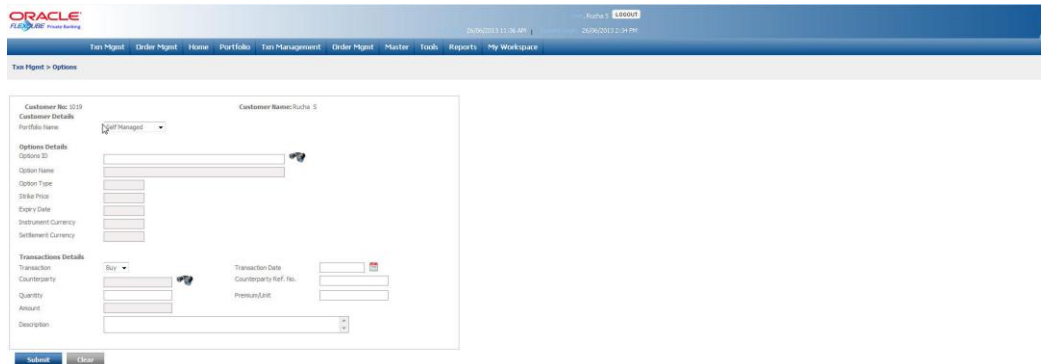


Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Alternative Investments' Module of FCPB.

#### **User Access levels:**

**Customer:** Can capture the transactions only for his/her portfolios.

## **Screen:**



**Figure 5.33: Options Transaction Capture**

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system select Txn Mgmt → Options

## **Procedure for placing transaction:**


### **Step 1:**


The system auto-populates the customer no., name and default portfolio name of the customer which is already in context.

### **Step 2:**

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

### **Step 3:**

Click the  icon next to the Options ID field.


When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Options ID field, Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Options ID.

Once the user selects the Option ID following fields are automatically get populated.

- Options Name
- Options Type



- Strike Price
- Expiry Date
- Instrument Currency
- Settlement Currency

The user can select the options instrument either by directly entering the id or by searching for the security using  icon as explained in general characteristics section.



The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

The user can view the Recommended instruments, Focussed instruments, House Views details and Instrument Analytics details by clicking on the respective icons next to the Security ID field as explained in General Characteristics section.


#### **Step 4:**

Select the appropriate option from the Transaction drop-down list.

#### **Step 5:**

Select the appropriate transaction date.

#### **Step 6:**

Select the appropriate issuer/broker by clicking on the  icon next to the Counterparty field.

#### **Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate counterparty reference no.

#### **Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate quantity in the Quantity field.



The quantity entered should be in multiples of regular lot size.

#### **Step 9:**

Enter the appropriate value in the Premium/Unit field.

**Step 10:**

The value in the amount field gets populated on entering the Quantity and Premium/Unit field.

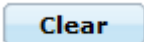
**Step 11:**

Enter the transaction description in the Description text box.

**Step 12:**

Click the Submit button.

On submitting the holding, the system displays a confirmation message on the screen.

If the user changes decision on updating the holding, can clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

## 5.12 Forex

### 5.12.1 Order Management for Forex



Please note that though this section of user manual explains order management and capabilities of 'Forex' instrument type, but these features of order management UI and processing would be available to the bank, only if the bank's license entitles them to the 'Alternative Investments' module and 'Order Management' module.

### Forex Order Capture

#### User Access levels:

Customer can place orders for RM Managed, Self Managed, and Discretionary portfolios.

The 'Portfolio Name' field will display the list of Self Managed, RM Managed, and Discretionary portfolios based on the set up done for each portfolio type at the Admin level. Only portfolios of that type will appear in the drop down for which – 'Allow in OMS – Customer' is set to 'Y'

## Screen:

**Figure 5.34: Forex Order Capture**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system select Order Management → Forex → Order capture.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Portfolio Name	Displays the list of the portfolio names for the customer	Y
<b>Forex Details</b>		
Currency Pair	Display the currency pair name based on Commodity Currency and Terms Currency selected in Search Icon Popup.	Y
Base Currency	Based on the FX ID selected, display information of base currency in view mode.	Y
Terms Currency	Based on the FX ID selected, display information of terms currency in view mode.	Y
Last Exchange Rate	Displays the value of Last Exchange Rate.	Y
<b>Order Details</b>		
Deal Type	Enables the user to select the option with values like NDF and DFO.	Y
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the transaction type from the drop-down list. By default the system selects the Buy option.	Y

Field	Description	Mandatory
Trade Date	By default display the current system date or business date whichever is later but user can modify the trade date.	Y
FX Settlement Date	Displays the Date keyed in is considered as Expiry/Maturity/Settlement date for a given deal type. This value is stored as Sub portfolio ID at holding level.  For forex, subportfolio id should be Dealttype_Settlement date.	Y
Terms(In Days)	Displays the total number of days to settlement	N
Order Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate order type from the drop-down list. By default the system selects the Market Type option.	Y
Trigger Price	Enables the user to enter the trigger price if the Order Type is selected as Stop Loss or Limit Order from the drop-down list else system auto-populates the appropriate value.	Y
Time Condition	Enables the user to select appropriate values like GTC/IOC/Timed Order	Y
Expiry Date	Enables the user to enter Order Expiry Date	Y
Amount (In Base Currency)	Enables the user to enter Value is in Base currency of the Instrument ID selected.	Y
Treasury Rate	Enables the user to enter Treasury Rate per unit of commodity currency	Y
Amount Treasury Rate (In Terms Currency)	Value displayed is in Terms currency of the Instrument ID selected.	Y
Spread(decimal)	Displays the Spread as maintained in the system	Y
Customer Rate	Enables the user to enter Customer Rate per unit of Commodity currency	Y
Amount Customer Rate (In Terms currency)	Value displayed is in Terms currency of the instrument ID selected.	Y
Fees (In terms currency)	Display value of Fees as computed by the system	
Total Amount	Displays the Total amount charged to the customer	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Credit Limit Check	Hyperlink	Y/N
Revenue (In Terms Currency)	Displays the total commission received by the bank	Y
Revenue (In Base Currency)	Displays the total commission received by the bank	Y
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to enter the name of the counterparty for the transaction	Based on FAC
Counterparty Ref no	Enables the user to enter transaction reference number	Based on FAC
Description	This text box will capture any specific details for the order that the user would like to input	
<b>Account Details</b>		
Debit Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate Value displayed should have A/C no suffixed with the currency. For example 12345-USD	Y
Credit Account	Enables the user to select the appropriate Value displayed should have A/C no suffixed with the currency. For example 12345-USD	Y
Comments	Allows to capture user remarks before saving the order details	Y/N

### Procedure for Placing of an Order:

#### Step 1:


For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' defaults to the 1st Portfolio name in alphabetical order of Portfolio type 'Self Managed'.


#### Step 2:


Click the  icon next to Source Code field and select the appropriate Source Code.

If Check Certificate for Source is set to Yes in Instrument Type Master screen, then the system checks for certificate and its expiry. If it is set to No system does not check for the certificate and allows the user to proceed further.

#### Step 3:

Click the  icon next to the Currency Pair field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Currency Pair field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the future instrument.

 The instrument search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

Once the user selects the Forex ID following fields are automatically get populated.

- Base Currency
- Terms Currency
- Last Exchange Rate

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate deal from the Deal Type drop down list.

**Step 5:**

From the Transaction drop-down list, select the appropriate transaction type.

There are two options available for Forex Transaction. They are Buy and Sell. By default Buy option is selected.

**Step 6:**

Select the appropriate Trade Date.

By default, the system displays the current system date or business date whichever is later but user can modify the trade date.

**Step 7:**

Select the appropriate FX settlement date.

Once the settlement date

**Step 8:**

From the Order Type drop-down list, select the appropriate order type.

If the user selects the Order Type as Stop Loss or Limit Order, the Trigger price field is editable and user can enter the desired trigger price else system auto-populates the appropriate trigger price.

**Step 9:**

Select the appropriate option from Time Condition drop-down list.

**Step 10:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Amount (In Base Currency) text box.

**Step 11:**

Enter the appropriate rate in the Treasury Rate text box.

The system defaults this value to the last exchange rate.

**Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate rate in the Customer Rate text box.

By default, the system displays, (Treasury rate + Spread) for buy orders and (Treasury rate – Spread) for sell orders.

The system also displays the spread value as maintained and recomputes the same as and when the Customer Rate, Treasury Rate are modified. In addition, the system displays the Amount Customer Rate (In Terms Currency), Fees (In Terms Currency), Total Amount, Revenue (In Terms Currency) and Revenue (In Base Currency).

**Step 13:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty using Search Icon and enter the appropriate ref no. in the Counterparty Ref No. text box.

**Step 14:**

Enter the description, if any in the Description text box.

**Step 15:**

Select the appropriate account from the Debit Account drop-down list.

**Step 16:**

Select the appropriate account from the Credit Account drop-down list.

**Step 17:**

Enter the comments if any, in the Comments text box..

**Step 18:**

Click on the Submit button.

Once the user clicks on the Submit button, system displays the Exception pop-up window if the order to be placed violates certain conditions such as

- Selected instrument is not in Approved List
- Selected instrument is not in Model Portfolio
- Selected instrument is not in Recommended List
- Deviation from Model Asset Allocation

Customers can self approve all the exceptions that has occurred while placing the order, except the exceptions which are defined at level '99999'

### **5.12.2 Transaction Processing for Forex**



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Alternative Investments' Module of FCPB.

#### **Description:**

The foreign exchange (currency or Forex or FX) market exists wherever one currency is traded for another. It is the largest and most liquid financial market in the world. Exchanging currencies can take two basic forms: an outright or a swap. When two parties exchange one currency for another the transaction is called an outright. When two parties agree to exchange and re-exchange (in future) one currency for another, it is called a swap.



## User Access levels:

**Customer:** Can capture the transactions only for his/her portfolios.

## Screen:

**Figure 5.35: Forex Transaction Capture**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system select Txn Mgmt → Forex

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No	The customer no. is displayed	
Customer Name	The customer name is displayed	
Portfolio Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate portfolio from the drop-down list	
<b>Forex Details</b>		
Currency Pair	Displays the currency pair name based on Commodity Currency and Terms Currency selected in Search Icon Popup	
Base Currency	Displays the information of base currency in view mode, based on the FX ID selected.	
Terms Currency	Displays the information of terms currency in view mode, based on the FX ID selected.	
<b>Transaction Details</b>		

Field	Description	Mandatory
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction type from the drop-down list.	Y
Deal Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate deal type from the drop down list	Y
Amount (In Base Currency)	Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in base currency of the selected Instrument.	Y
Amount (In Terms Currency)	Displays amount in terms currency and is calculated as Amount in Base CCY * Forex Deal Rate	
Forex Deal Rate	Enter the Forex Rate per unit of commodity currency	Y
Fees (In Terms Currency)	Enables the user to enter the fees applicable for transacted units (In terms currency)	
Tax & Other Charges (In Terms Currency)	Enables the user to enter the tax applicable for transaction amount (In terms currency)	
Total Amount (In Terms Currency)	Displays the total amount of transaction in terms currency.	
FX Forward Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate FX forward date.	Y
Transaction Date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date.	Y
Counterparty Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate counterparty name using the Search icon.	N
Counterparty Ref. No.	Enables the user to enter the appropriate ref. no. in the Counterparty Ref No text box.	N
Description	Enables the user to enter the transaction details, if any.	Y

#### **Procedure for Placing Transaction:**


### Step 1:


The system auto-populates the name and ID of the customer.

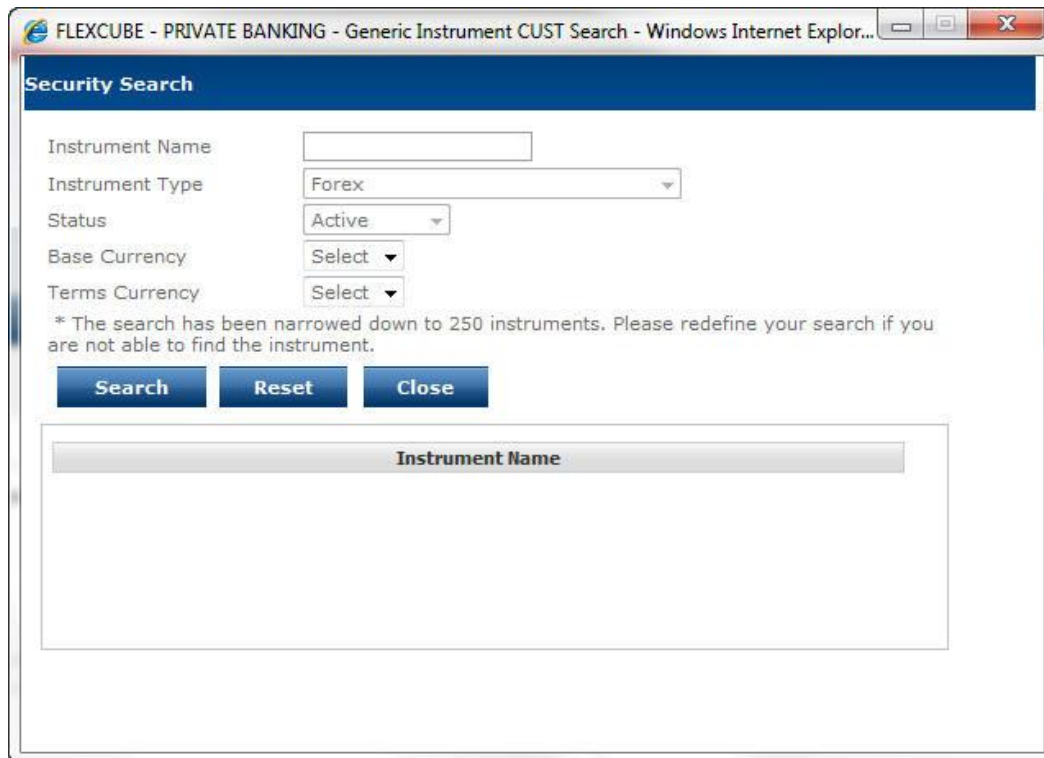
### Step 2:

For a customer login, the 'Portfolio Name' populates the 'Self Managed' default portfolio, followed by other portfolios in alphabetical order. Select a portfolio.

### Step 3:

Click the  icon next to the Currency Pair field.

When the user clicks on the  icon next to the Currency Pair field, Instrument Search window appears. Enter the appropriate search criteria in the respective fields to search for the Forex instrument.




**Figure 5.36: Forex Instrument Search Window**

Once the user selects the Forex instrument following fields are automatically get populated.

- Base Currency

- Terms Currency

The user can select the forex instrument either by directly entering the instrument name or by searching for the security using  icon as explained in general characteristics section.



The security search screen displays only securities which are in open status and which are approved by the bank. Securities which are suspended from trading will not be displayed in the search screen.

**Step 4:**

Select the appropriate transaction option from the Transaction Type drop-down list.

**Step 5:**

Enter the appropriate amount in the Amount (In Base Currency) text box.

**Step 6:**

Enter the appropriate rate per unit of Commodity Currency in the Forex Deal Rate text box.

Once the user enters the Forex Deal Rate system calculates the amount and displays it in Terms Currency.

**Step 7:**

Enter the appropriate fees in terms currency, if any in the Fees text box.

**Step 8:**

Enter the appropriate tax and other charges in terms currency, if any in the Tax & Other Charges text box.

Once the Fees and Tax & Other Charges are entered, system calculates the total transaction amount and displays it in the Total Amount text box.

**Step 9:**

Select the appropriate FX Forward date.

**Step 10:**

Select the appropriate transaction date.

**Step 11:**

Select the appropriate Counterparty Name using the  icon.

**Step 12:**

Enter the appropriate ref. no. in the Counterparty Ref. No. text box.

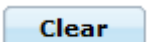
**Step 13:**

Enter the transaction description in the Description text box.

**Step 14:**

Click the Submit button.

On submitting the holding, the system displays a confirmation message on the screen.

If the user changes decision on updating the holding, can clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button. .

## 5.13 Generic Instruments



Please note that transaction capture UI and processing feature would be available in FCPB only if the bank's license entitles the bank for 'Mutual Funds and Insurance' Module of FCPB.

### Description:

It is observed that the Others instrument type has few drawbacks. It does not support Partial Sale of units. To overcome this problem, the new instrument type called 'Generic' is introduced.

### 5.13.1 Generic Instruments Transaction Processing

#### User Access levels:

**Customer:** Can capture the Generic instrument holdings for the available portfolios. The customer can also enter the back dated Generic Instrument.

#### Screen:

Oracle  
FLEXCUBE Private Banking

20/09/2013 11:26 AM | Customer Name: Ruchi S. L000000

Transaction Management | Order Mgmt | Home | Portfolio | Transaction Management | Order Mgmt | Master | Tools | Reports | My Workspace

Transaction Management

Customer No.: 1010 | Customer Name: Ruchi S.

Portfolio Name: Self Managed

Instrument Details

Instrument Name: 2011

Instrument Currency: USD

Settlement Currency: USD

Account No.: 1566974

Transaction Details

Transaction Type: Buy

Transaction Date: 10/10/12

Units: 100

Price: 1000

Fees: 0

Tax & Other charges: 0

Amount: 120000

Description: 120000

Exchange Rate: 1.20000

Submit Clear

***Figure 5.37: Generic Instrument – Transaction Management***

### **Rules for Commencement of a Transaction:**

- Transactions can be updated only for customers in active status.
- For capturing a holding the customer should have at least one portfolio coupled to his/her id.

## **Screen Navigation:**

After logging in the system select Transaction Management → Generic Instrument.

Field	Description	Mandatory
<b>Customer Details</b>		
Customer No	Displays the customer no.	
Customer Name	Displays the Customer Name.	
Portfolio Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate portfolio from the drop-down list	Y
<b>Instrument details</b>		
Name of Instrument	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument by clicking on the search icon if it is existing instrument. Else enables to enter the new instrument name in the Name of Instrument text box.	Y
Instrument Currency	Displays the currency for the selected instrument	Y
Settlement Currency	Display the settlement currency for the selected instrument	Y
Account No	Enables the user to enter the account number	Y
<b>Transaction Details</b>		
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate option from Transaction Type drop-down list	Y
Transaction date	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction date using the calendar icon	Y
Units	Enables the user to enter the appropriate units in the Units field	Y
Price	Enables the user to enter the appropriate price in the Price field	Y
Fees	Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Fees field	
Tax & Other Charges	Enables the user to enter the appropriate amount in the Tax and other charges field	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Amount	Displays the total amount of transaction.  For Buy: (Units * Price) + Fees + Tax & Other Charges  For Sell: (Units * Price) - Fees - Tax & Other Charges	Y
Description	Enables the user to enter the transaction details if any, in the Description text box.  It is a free text box and allows the user to enter maximum 250 characters.	
Exchange	This field is enterable when the Instrument CCY is different from the Settlement CCY.	Y

Enter the appropriate details in the Generic instrument – Transaction Capture screen as shown in the screen above and save the details.

Once the user clicks on the Save button, the transaction get saved and the system displays the message as 'Generic Instrument Transaction Saved Successfully'.

## 5.14 Common Order Book

### User Access levels:

**Customer:** The customer can view the status of the orders initiated for his/her Portfolios



## Screen:

Order ID	Portfolio Name	Inst Name	Inst Type	Order Type	Order Date	Order Qty	Order Price	Order Amt	Order Status	Action
1285	Inst Management	A22	346	BUY	12/03/2013	50,000	90.0000	900,000	Expired Equity	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1286	Inst Management	A22	346	BUY	12/03/2013	50,000	90.0000	900,000	Expired Bond	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1287	Inst Management	Max EQ	346	SELL	12/03/2013	300,000	1,000,000	300,000,000	Expired Equity	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1288	Inst Management	CAVABA	346	SELL	12/03/2013	300,000	87.0917	8,709,170	Cancelled	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1289	Inst Management	CAVABA	346	SELL	12/03/2013	300,000	87.0917	8,709,170	Expired Equity	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1290	Inst Management	Max EQ	346	SELL	12/03/2013	300,000	1,000,000	300,000,000	Expired Bond	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1291	Inst Management	CAVABA	346	BUY	12/03/2013	300,000	87.0917	8,709,170	Cancelled	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1292	Inst Management	CAVABA	346	SELL	12/03/2013	300,000	87.0917	8,709,170	Expired Bond	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1293	Inst Management	CAVABA	346	SELL	12/03/2013	300,000	87.0917	8,709,170	Cancelled	<a href="#">View Details</a>
1294	Inst Management	CAVABA	346	BUY	12/03/2013	300,000	87.0917	8,709,170	Cancelled	<a href="#">View Details</a>

**Figure 5.38: Common Order Book Screen**

### Screen Navigation:

Entry to the screen:

1. Select the "Order Management" option on the main menu

→ Common Order Book


### How to Read the Screen:

1. This order book displays the orders initiated for securities across all instrument types.
2. The statuses of all the orders initiated are displayed in this screen.

On reaching the screen the user can view two sections. The first section provides multiple filter alternatives to observe the order book and the second section displays all the orders for the selected criteria.

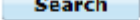
3. The first tab provides the user with the multiple filter options which can be employed either as solo or in combinations with the other filter options in the screen. This provides the user with flexibility while accessing the order book. The information of these filter options are provided below:

- **Instrument Type:** The user has the option to view all the orders initiated for a particular instrument on the current business day.
- **Instrument Name:** The customer can filter the orders for a particular instrument by selecting the instrument for which he/she wants to see the orders.
- **Order Type:** The customer also has the flexibility to sort the orders by the type of order. By default, system displays the order status for all the order types. The user can select the desired order type from the Order Type drop-down list to view the details.

- **Order Status:** The customer can be aware of the status of the orders initiated by inspecting the Order Book. This field provides the user the option to filter the orders, placed on the current business day, by their status.
- **Portfolio Name:** The customer has an option to filter the orders by portfolio name as well. He can select the portfolio name and click on search for a specific date range and he can see all the orders placed against the selected portfolio name for a specific date range.
- **Date Range:** The user also has the option to view the history of orders for a particular date range. The date range can be defined in the 'From' and 'To' fields provided in the screen. However, this option will be available only after the bank's business hours. The calendar for selecting the dates has been provided adjacent to each of these fields. Click on the icon , in order to open the calendar and select the suitable dates.



Please note that the status updates are done by the trading system and are only displayed by the FCPB.

After opting for the appropriate search option, click on the  button. This will display all the orders in the chosen search criteria.

To change the filter criteria click on the  button.

4. The second tab displays all the orders placed during the current business day across all the instrument types for the selected criteria.
5. From the time the orders are initiated to the time they are matched, the trading system labels the orders at each stage with their corresponding status. All the orders initiated by the users are said to be in 'open' status till the moment, they are transformed into any of the below given status. The order statuses are displayed online in the Order Book. Let us comprehend the various statuses displayed in the trading system:
  - **Expired:** The orders which do not get executed at the exchange due to time-out are displayed as Expired orders. To comprehend this with uncomplicated words, orders which are placed with time condition (IOC or Day) and fail to act in accordance will be automatically cancelled by the trading system. Such orders will be identified as expired.  
  
For a sell instruction, on change of status of an order to 'expired', the system will add back the corresponding quantity to the balance quantity of the security. Obviously, this addition of the quantity will be done to the security in the portfolio of the customer through which the user had initiated the order.  
  
The reverse rule will be applied for a buy instruction.
  - **Cancelled:** The orders associated with the 'Day' time condition and which fail to get executed will be automatically cancelled by the trading system at the close of business Day. Such orders will be denoted as 'Expired' by the trading system. However, in the event of failure to receive the status information from the trading system, the FCPB at the close of business hours will automatically cancel all the open orders and update the status as 'cancelled'.

The orders which are cancelled by the user will also be displayed as cancelled.

- **Rejected:** The orders which are cancelled by the broker/exchange due to inaccuracy in the order instruction will be displayed as rejected.

Similar to the status 'Expired', on change of status of a sell order to 'cancelled' or 'rejected', the system will add back the corresponding quantity to the balance quantity of the security or will negate the balance quantity by the corresponding quantity for a buy instruction.

- **Executed:** Orders which are successfully executed will be displayed as 'Executed'
- **Partially Executed:** The status of the order is displayed as partially executed when a portion of the order is executed, but not all of the order.
- **Open:** All the orders initiated in the system and which are yet to undergo any of the above mentioned status change will all be displayed as 'open' orders.
- **Ordered:** The status of the order is displayed as Ordered when order approval is not required and the user has successfully placed the order.
- **Pending Auth:** The status of the order is displayed as Pending Auth when the order is pending for approval from the authorizer.
- **Deleted by Maker:** The status of the order is displayed as Deleted by Maker when the person initiated the order deletes it.
- **Rejected by Auth:** The status of the order is displayed as Rejected by Auth when the order is rejected during authorization.
- **Excp Approval:** The status of the order is displayed as Excp Approval when the user has received warning messages while placing the order and is pending for approval from the authorizer.
- **Inv Spc Approval:** An investment specialist is an employee of the bank with expertise in handling specific types of investments like - realty, structured products, bonds etc.  
There are certain instruments which need the involvement of investment specialist to complete the execution of transactions. In these cases investment specialist negotiates with counterparties to arrive at a deal to get better price.  
The status of the order is displayed as Inv Spc Approval when the Investment Specialist flag is set as Yes in Product Access Level of Employee Maintenance and is pending for approval from Investment Specialist.
- **Partially Executed Cancelled:** The status of the order is displayed as partially executed cancelled when a portion of the order is executed, and other portion of it is cancelled.

The fields have been briefly described below:

Field	Description	Mandatory
Input Section		
Instrument Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument type from the drop-down list.	Y
Instrument Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument using the Search icon.	N

Field	Description	Mandatory
Order Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate Order Type from the drop-down list.	Y
Order Status	Enables the user to select the appropriate status from the drop-down list.	Y
Portfolio Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate Portfolio Name to view the desired orders.	Y
Country of Market	Enables the user to select the appropriate Country of Market using the Search icon to view the desired orders.	N
Order Date From	Enables the user to enter/select the appropriate From Date to view the desired orders.	N
Order Date To	Enables the user to enter/select the appropriate To Date to view the desired orders	N
<b>Display Section</b>		
Order ID	Displays the order id of the corresponding order	Display
Portfolio Name	Displays the name of the portfolio associated with the order	Display
Inst Type	Displays the instrument type for the corresponding order	Display
Inst Name	Displays the name of the instrument.	Display
Inst CCY	Displays the instrument currency of the instrument against which the order has been initiated.	Display
Order Type	Displays the type of order. For eg. Buy, Sell or any other order type.	Display
Order Date	Displays the date on which the order was placed	Display
Order Qty	Displays the order quantity. In case of amount based orders, this column is blank.	Display
Order Price	Displays the price at which the transaction was placed.  In case of insurance, the price column displays the Premium amount. This is blank in case of amount based orders.	Display
Order Amt	Displays the amount of the order. In case of insurance, the price column displays the Sum Insured.	Display
Order Status	Displays the current status of the order	Display

Field	Description	Mandatory
Action	This field displays the links to View Details/Modify/Cancel/Approve	Display
View Details	All the users who have access to common order book can view all the details of the order including the comments written by checker by clicking on the View Details hyperlink. They cannot modify the details of the order.	Display
Cancel	Customer can cancel the corresponding order.	Display

### Transaction Details Pop Up

In order to view the transaction details for the orders through the order book, a new hyperlink “Trxn Details” is introduced for following order status in the Order Book screen:

- Executed
- Partially Executed
- Partially Executed Cancelled

When the user clicks on the Trxn Details hyperlink, it displays the details of transactions for a particular order.

The screenshot shows the Oracle Financials Order Book interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like 'Order Mgmt', 'Order Mgmt', 'Home', 'Portfolio', 'In Management', 'Order Mgmt', 'Master', 'Tools', 'Reports', and 'My Workspace'. Below this, the 'Order Mgmt > Order Book' section is active. A search form is visible with fields for 'Instrument Type' (set to Bonds), 'Instrument Name', 'Order Type' (set to All), 'Order Status' (set to All), 'Portfolio Name' (set to All), 'Order Date From' (set to 1/1/2012), and 'Order Date To' (set to 3/31/2013). Below the search form, there's a table with columns: 'Order ID', 'Portfolio Name', 'Inst Type', 'Inst Name', 'Inst CCY', 'Order Type', 'Order Date', 'Order Qty', 'Order Price', 'Order Amt', 'Order Status', and 'Action'. The table contains one row with the following data: Order ID: 1016, Portfolio Name: 1016, Inst Type: BOND, Inst Name: Bonds 01, Inst CCY: ZAR, Order Type: 1016, Order Date: 1/1/2012, Order Qty: 100,000, Order Price: 10,000, Order Amt: 10,000,000, Order Status: Executed, and Action: View Details / Trxn Details. At the bottom of the table, there are 'Page' and 'Go' buttons.

**Figure 5.40: Bond Transaction Details pop up**

### Screen Navigation:

**After logging in the system select Order Mgmt → Order Book.**

The pop up displays details of the total executed quantity, remaining quantity and Cancelled quantity (if any). It also displays the Modify hyperlink, on click of which the Transaction Modify screen appears to modify the order. Customers can modify only those orders which are placed by him/her. Orders placed by RM cannot be modified by the customers.

## 5.15 Transaction Search

The Transaction Search category under the Transaction Management is used by the customer to search for the transaction by using various parameters. He can also modify the transaction by selecting the transaction and then applying the appropriate action.

Please note that the instrument types seen on this screen will depend on the product license that you are entitled to.

### User Access levels:

**Customer:** Can modify or view the transaction.

## Screen:



**Figure 5.41: Transaction Search Screen**

## Screen Navigation:

After logging in the system select Transaction Management → Transaction Search

Field	Description	Mandatory
Customer No	Displays the customer no.	
Customer Name	Displays the customer name	
Portfolio Name	Enables the user to select the appropriate portfolio name from the drop-down list.	
Instrument Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate instrument type from the drop-down list	
Instrument	Enables the user to select the appropriate Instrument by clicking on the search icon available next to the Instrument field	
Folio / Account No	Enables the user to select the appropriate Tax A/c Identifier. This field is enabled only if the selected Instrument Type is Equity or MF	
Status	Enables the user to select the appropriate status from the drop-down list	
Country of Market	Enables the user to select the appropriate Country of Market using Search icon to search for the desired transactions. If selected, the system displays the transactions for the selected country only.	
Settlement Status	Enables the user to select the appropriate Settlement Status to search for the desired transactions.	

Field	Description	Mandatory
Transaction Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate transaction type from the drop-down list. The system auto-populates the 'Put' option in the drop-down list, if the selected instrument is 'Putable' or 'Callable/Putable'.	
Transaction Date From	Enables the user to select the appropriate From transaction date using the calendar icon	
Transaction Date To	Enables the user to select the appropriate To transaction date using the calendar icon	
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount	
Fee Amount	Displays the fee amount for the corresponding transaction	
Transaction Date	Displays the transaction date of the corresponding transaction	
Status	Displays the status of the corresponding transaction	
Maker Name	Displays the Maker Name	
Action	Displays the group of actions available to be performed on the corresponding transaction	

#### **Procedure to Modify the Transaction:**


##### **Step 1:**

From the Portfolio Name drop-down list, select the appropriate Instrument type.

##### **Step 2:**

From the Instrument Type drop-down list, select the appropriate Instrument type

##### **Step 3:**

Click the  icon next to the Instrument field and select the appropriate Instrument.

## **5.16 Bank A/C and Loans Screen**

#### **User Access levels:**



**Customer:** The Bank A/c and Loans screen will retrieve all held away accounts in editable-mode for Assets and Liabilities and also TD Instrument Type. For internal/non-held away accounts retrieval of data is only in Display-Only mode and such records cannot be modified by customer. Retrieval logic is based on whether the banking product type is an Asset or Liability.

Held away accounts created by RM or Customer can be modified by the Customer in the future. Held away accounts created by Customer can be modified only by Customer and are non modifiable to the RM user.

The same screen is also invoked in Customer Login from Customer Dashboard -> Network portlet->Network Blowup icon

## Screen:

**Overview of Bank accounts, Credit Cards and Loans**

View Account Type	Bank	A/C No	Currency	Balance	As on Date	Maturity/ Next Due Date
Savings Bank AC - Demo Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Demo Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Demo Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Demo Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Axis Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Axis Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Axis Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Axis Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Axis Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	
Savings Bank AC - Axis Bank	1231	1231	USD	899,999.00	05/04/2013	

**Add / Edit other accounts, credit cards and Loans**

Account Details

A/C Type: Savings Bank AC  
 Bank Name: Axis Bank  
 Branch: 1231  
 A/C No: 1231  
 As on Date: 05/04/2013  
 Booking date: 05/04/2013  
 Maturity/Next Due Date: 05/04/2013  
 A/C Status: Active

Account Sub Type: Savings Bank AC  
 Currency: USD  
 MICR: 1231  
 Balance: 899,999.00  
 Tenor(In Days): 360  
 Interest Rate: 10.00  
 Portfolio Name: Portfolio

Buttons: Save, Add, Clear

This application is best viewed at 1024x768 resolution with Internet Explorer 8.0 or Firefox 3.0+ browser.

**Figure 5.42: Bank A/C and Loans Capture**

## Procedure for Placing of a Bank A/c or Loan:

### Step 1:

The customer shall select from the list of available Banking Products, on selection of which the corresponding Banking Account Subtype shall get default listed. Similarly, the intended Bank Name and Currency is selected from the dropdown list.

### Step 2:

The branch name, MICR and A/C No., Balance and As on Date fields are entered.

**STOP** Account no. is validated for duplicity. If same a/c no exist for any Bank ID for same customer, system should display error message - 'Record already exists for this A/c no.' Customer should not be allowed to enter same account number even if the Bank Name is different for that same customer.

**STOP** As on Date should not be Greater than System date.

### Step 3:

The following fields are entered in the banking product type is a term deposit: Tenor (In Days), Booking Date, Interest Rate, Maturity/Next Due date

### Step 4:

Portfolio name is a display only field which gets populated for asset product types and is blank for liability type of products. The A/c status field is selected from the dropdown, which by default shall be ACTIVE.




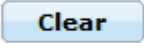
If the user sets the A/C status to CLOSED and if Balance is greater than zero, system should display an error message stating **“Balance greater than zero; Please make the balance to zero to close this Account”**

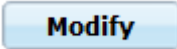


For external Bank accounts, if no held away portfolio is found, system should display an error message stating **“No preferred portfolio exists for Held away portfolio type”**

#### Step 5:

After entering all the fields in accordance to the outline given in the above steps, the user can proceed to click on the Add  button.

If the user changes the decision on the details entered, he/she can clear the entire details captured earlier by clicking on the  button.

To modify the details that are entered, select the Radio button from the View Section for the record to be modified and then click on the Modify  button.

---

## 6. Reports

### 6.1 Introduction

Apart from providing on-screen views and analysis, FLEXCUBE Private Banking also generates industry standard reports covering the customer's individual portfolio and also household portfolio. Summary reports showing the overall Net-worth, Holdings, exposure analyses and returns as well as detailed reports covering in addition to the above, the details of transactions, corporate actions and tax classification of gains for a defined date range are also provided.

Transaction reports provide details of transactions under each portfolio for various user defined criteria.

The system will provide for on-demand and also end-of-day batch report generation. Reports can be generated for a date or for a historical range, applying various filters, in PDF and excel format, as applicable.

#### Description:

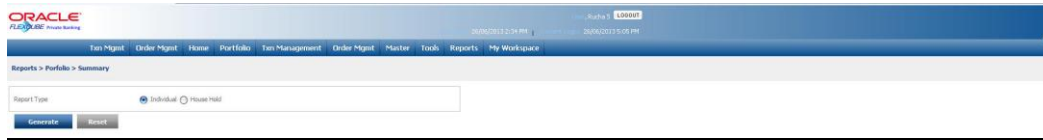
Customer can generate Detailed, Summary and Transactions report for both individuals as well as for households. Summary Reports will give a bird's eye view to the clients' portfolios.

#### User Access Levels:

**Customer:** Customer has an access to portfolio reports through Customer Login.

Fields	Description	Mandatory
Report Type	Enables the user to select the appropriate report type by selecting the radio button	Y

## Customer Login:



**Figure 6.1: Summary Report Screen for Customer**

## Navigation:

After logging in the system as Customer, select Reports → Portfolio → Summary Portfolio from the top menu, for summary portfolio report.

After logging in the system as Customer, select Reports → Portfolio → Detailed Portfolio from the top menu, for detailed portfolio report.

After logging in the system as Customer, select Reports → Portfolio → Transaction Report from the top menu, for detailed portfolio report.

On clicking **Portfolio Summary Report** the report gets generated as a PDF document. To reset the screen select **Reset** button.

Following are the formats of the list of reports available at individual level (similar reports at household level will also be generated):

- Summary Portfolio Report

Customer Name Rucha S  
Address  
Relationship Manager GeetaG  
Home Phone  
Work Home  
Mobile Phone  
Email Id geeta.gaidhani@oracle.com



Summary Portfolio Report generated as on 26/06/2013

Networth Summary				
Particulars	Currency	Amount	Exchange Rate	Amt in INR
Portfolio Details				
BONDS FLOATING INTEREST RATE	INR	999,902.000	1.000	999,902.000
Balanced	INR	652,914.587	1.000	652,914.587
Commodity linked	INR	172,500.000	1.000	172,500.000
Corpus Analysis group	INR	999,989.000	1.000	999,989.000
Currency	INR	1,799,976.000	1.000	1,799,976.000
Currency	USD	199,976.000	52.000	10,398,752.000
Debt	INR	9,552,450.100	1.000	9,552,450.100
Debt Short Term	INR	143,070.000	1.000	143,070.000
Direct Equity	INR	874,125.000	1.000	874,125.000
Direct Equity	SGD	500,100.000	36.660	18,333,666.000
ELSS	USD	4,520.000	52.000	235,040.000
EQUITY	INR	21,619,233.989	1.000	21,619,233.989

- Detailed Portfolio Report

Customer Name

Pravash 123 Sahoo

Address

, , Karnataka,

Relationship Manager

Deba Nayak

Home Phone

2644722

Work Home

66562270

Mobile Phone

985326541

Email Id

debabrata.nayak@oracle.com

Detailed Report generated as on 23 August 2012

Networth Summary				
Particulars	Currency	Amount	Exchange Rate	Amt in INR
Portfolio Details				
Debt	INR	1,171,666.67	1.00	1,171,666.67
ELSS	USD	2,886.90	48.50	140,014.65
Global Funds	INR	25,000.00	1.00	25,000.00
Others	USD	9,001.00	48.50	436,548.50
MIP Fund	USD	7,000.00	48.50	339,500.00
Currency	INR	30,000,000.00	1.00	30,000,000.00
Currency	USD	15,000,000.00	48.50	727,500,000.00

- Transaction Report

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
Transactions Activity Report																	
Transactions Entered between 01/04/2013 and 19/04/2013																	
Date of Reporting: 26/06/2013																	
Operation: ALL																	
Customer Name: ALL																	
Instrument Type: ALL																	
Transaction Date	Transaction ID	Unit	Customer ID	Customer Name	Portfolio	Instrument Type	Instrument Name	Instrument CCY	Folio/Account No	Transaction Type	Quantity	Unit Price	Transaction Amount	Fee Amount	Transaction Tax	Transaction Levy	STT
01/04/2013 12:04:00	18658	HO	1019	Rucha S	RM Managed	TD	TD-BR	INR	TD-BR21042013	TD Booking			12,000.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
01/04/2013 12:04:00	18424	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	RF	RF-KOTAKRF	INR	1-8700	Buy	100.000	45.000	6,750.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
01/04/2013 12:04:00	18388	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	ROKD	JK Bond	INR	BSD-310	Interest			1.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
01/04/2013 12:04:00	18397	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	ROKD	JK Bond	INR	BSD-310	Buy	1,000.000	10,250.000	10,250.000.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
19/04/2013 12:04:00	18400	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	ROKD	JK Bond	INR	BSD-310	Interest			100.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
19/04/2013 12:04:00	18399	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	ROKD	JK Bond	INR	BSD-310	Sell	100.000	10,250.000	1,025.000.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
13/04/2013 12:04:00	18396	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	ROKD	JK Bond	INR	BSD-310	Interest			1.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
13/04/2013 12:04:00	18395	HO	1019	Rucha S	Self Managed	ROKD	JK Bond	INR	BSD-310	Buy	100.000	10,250.000	1,025.000.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
19/04/2013 12:04:00	18957	HO	1019	Rucha S	RM2	TD	TD-BR	INR	1019-0205-365	Interest			100.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
Total no. of records:												9					

- Detailed Historic Portfolio

Customer Name

Alok Sharma

Address

Juhu

Your Relationship

Deb Nayak

Mobile No.

6323263

Office No.

23521633

RM email-id

pwmadmin@identity.com

Mumbai

Maharashtra, 415236

FLEXCUBE

PRIVATE BANKING SUITE

Historic Portfolio Detailed Statement

For the period 01/01/2009 to 30/11/2009

Customer Holdings*											
Instrument Name	Folio/Account	Quantity	Avg. Buy Price	Total Cost	NAV Date	Market Price	Market Value	Unrealized Gain/Loss	Realized Gain Loss	Dividend	Return (%)
Corporate Bond											
Hyundai Corp. Bond	1120	110.00	17.00	3,815.66	30/11/2009	16.00	3,591.21	-224.45	0.00	0.00	42.64
Direct Equity											
GOOGLE	4512265	48.00	191.00	13,283.88	30/11/2009	120.00	8,345.89	-4,937.99	0.00	0.00	255.47
TOYOTA	4512265	210.00	72.00	21,907.97	30/11/2009	70.00	21,299.42	-608.55	0.00	0.00	5.06
Equity Funds											
Infosys	4512265	325.00	50.00	524.22	30/11/2009	42.00	440.35	-83.88	0.00	0.00	4.90
Hedge Funds MF											
JPMC Highly	123	25.00	15.00	375.00	30/11/2009	12.00	300.00	-75.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Private Equity Structured Product											
CITI Bank Private	123	50.00	25.00	40.32	30/11/2009	34.00	54.84	14.52	0.00	0.00	78.02
Real Estate Investment Trust											
New India Infra Fund	32699	60.00	80.00	154.85	30/11/2009	92.00	178.08	23.23	0.00	0.00	23.12
Reliance MF	74123698	345.00	35.00	389.54	30/11/2009	35.00	389.54	0.00	0.00	0.00	32.16
Reliance MF	4523698	150.00	35.00	169.36	30/11/2009	35.00	169.36	0.00	0.00	0.00	32.50
SAIZEN REAL	4789635-56	320.00	15.00	4,800.00	30/11/2009	2.50	800.00	-4,000.00	0.00	0.00	0.00




- Holding Period

Holding Period Report
Rucha S

**Customer Name:** Rucha S


**Address:** . . .



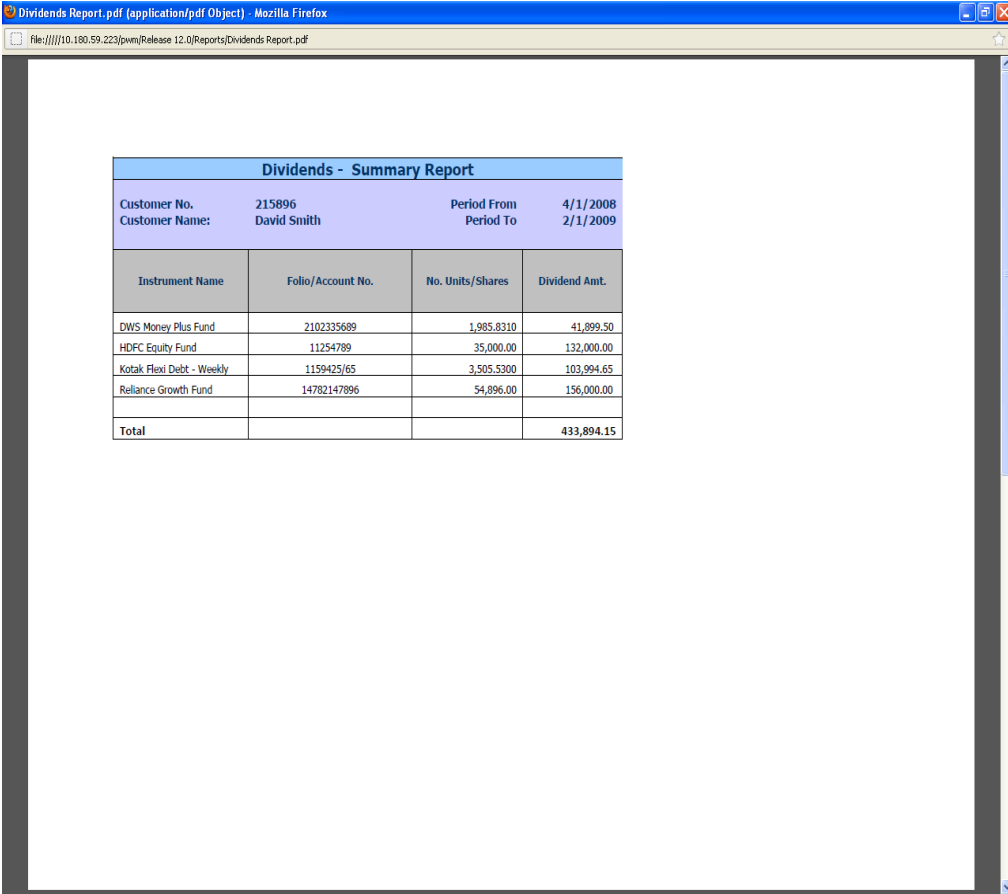
**Holding Period Report**  
As on 26/06/2013

Holding Period Report										
Instrument Name	Instrument Group	Portfolio Name	Folio / Account No	Instrument Currency	Original Buy Qty	Remaining Qty	Date of Purchase	Holding period (in days)	Buy Price	Market Value
Auto MF	EQUITY	Discretionary	MF-12345	INR	11.000	11.000	01/01/2013	176	1.000	11.000
Bonds10.1	Debt Short Term	RM1	BSD-310	INR	400.000	400.000	01/01/2012	542	4.500	17,640.000
Bonds10.1	Debt Short Term	RM2	BSD-310	INR	300.000	300.000	03/05/2012	419	13.500	13,230.000
Bonds20.1	Debt Short Term	RM Managed	BSD-310	INR	1,000.000	1,000.000	01/01/2012	542	4.500	110,000.000
Bonds20.1	Debt Short Term	RM Managed	BSD-310	INR	20.000	20.000	16/02/2012	496	5.400	2,200.000
CANARA	EQUITY	RM Rucha Cat.Gn	1-6700	INR	1,000.000	1,000.000	20/04/2012	432	50.000	87,091.670
CANARA	EQUITY	my new1	DP100-8900	INR	500.000	475.000	20/07/2012	341	75.160	41,368.540

Page 1 of 7



## Portfolio Dividend Report



**Dividends - Summary Report**

Customer No.	215896	Period From	4/1/2008
Customer Name:	David Smith	Period To	2/1/2009

Instrument Name	Folio/Account No.	No. Units/Shares	Dividend Amt.
DWS Money Plus Fund	2102335689	1,985.8310	41,899.50
HDFC Equity Fund	11254789	35,000.00	132,000.00
Kotak Flexi Debt - Weekly	1159425/65	3,505.5300	103,994.65
Reliance Growth Fund	14782147896	54,896.00	156,000.00
<b>Total</b>			<b>433,894.15</b>

- Capital Gains Report

The Capital Gains report displays the capital gains for the selected customer in the selected time period. The default report displays the net capital gain for each instrument.

If the customer selects the appropriate options to view the desired details then the capital gains for each transaction is displayed as below the summary in chronological order.

Capital Gains Detailed Report

Rucha S

### Capital Gains Detailed Report

Customer No : 1019

Period : 15/03/2011 to 16/03/2012

Customer Name: Rucha S


Date of Reporting : 26/06/2013

For Amount >=0

Instrument Name	Folio No	Currency	Buy Price	Buy Qty	Buy Cost	Buy Date	Qty Sold	Sale Price	Sale Proceeds	Sale Date	STCG/L	LTCG/L
EQ-TOYOTA	1-6700	INR	10.000	1,000.000	10,000.000	01/01/2012	1,000.000	20.000	20,000.000	10/01/2012	10,000	
MFKAVRY1	1177	INR	10.000	10,000.000	42,000.000	01/01/2012	4,200.000	50.000	210,000.000	20/01/2012	110,000	
Total		INR			52,000.000				230,000.000		120,000	0

# Total Amounts are shown after converting the individual currency balances in instrument currency into the customer currency, at the transaction date's exchange rate.

Page 1 of 1

 If you select any other preferred language, menu items for Reports will be shown in corresponding preferred language.

### 6.1.1 Reports Repository

FCPB generates various reports as mentioned below:

- Statement of Charges Report
- Transaction Advices
- Financial Planning Report
- Portfolio Reports
- Transactions Reports
- End of Day Repots (same format as Portfolio Reports)

Reporting repository is a feature that will help in storing or archiving these reports in some repository. The system generates some of the reports like portfolio reports etc. on the last day of every month and save the same into a repository.

The archiving facility has been provided to archive customer reports.



All the reports which are converted to BI Pub will be generated in the language selected at 'Preferred Language for Statement' field available in 'Demographics' section of 'Customer Creation' screen.